FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING MANUAL

Prepared under the Authority of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994

March, 2017

Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry
FOREWORD

The Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests

The overall context for forest management in Ontario is the Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests that was approved by Cabinet in 1994. The framework sets broad direction for forest policy and makes forest sustainability the primary objective of forest management. It helps to address climate change by ensuring Ontario’s forests contribute positively to the global environment. This contribution is made through the application of the principles for sustaining forests.

Overview of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act

The Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994 (CFSA) came into effect on April 1, 1995. The Act is enabling legislation, and provides for the regulation of forest planning, information, operations, licensing, trust funds, processing facilities, remedies and enforcement, and transitional provisions. The CFSA is designed to allow for the management of all forest-based values, while providing for the sustainability of Crown forests. The CFSA defines sustainability as long-term Crown forest health, and reflects the broad direction set out in the Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests.

A Manual Approach to Implementation of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act

The CFSA requires the provision of four manuals to guide various aspects of forest management in Ontario. These manuals are prepared in accordance with Section 68 of the Act and are regulated in accordance with Section 69(1):

1. The Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM);
2. The Forest Information Manual (FIM);
3. The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (FOSM); and

The FMPM is the pivotal document that provides direction for all aspects of forest management planning for Crown lands in Ontario within the area of the undertaking, as defined in Schedule 1 of MNRF’s Environmental Assessment Act Requirements for Forest Management on Crown Lands in Ontario, (2015) (Declaration Order MNR-75). This FMPM incorporates conditions 1 to 34 and 39(a) of Declaration Order MNR-75.

In accordance with the CFSA, forest sustainability will be determined in accordance with the approach described in the FMPM. The approach requires the identification of measurable indicators in order to assess the effectiveness of activities in achieving management objectives and to assess the sustainability of the forest for the management unit. For the
forest management plan (FMP), the determination of sustainability will be a conclusion that
the FMP provides for the long-term Crown forest health on the management unit, and has
regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including
recreational values and heritage values. Management unit annual reports require the
monitoring and evaluation of future forest conditions to compare with planned outcomes,
which provide a means for continual refinement, redevelopment and improvement of forest
management activities.

The FIM describes the information requirements the MNRF has to support forest
management. The FIM also provides for the sharing and exchange of forest-related
information between the MNRF and Ontario’s forest industry.

The FOSM sets out the over-arching principles and accepted approaches for forest
management, the standards for forest operations and silvicultural practices, the minimum
qualifications for forestry workers, and the procedures for the evaluation of forest
management in Ontario.

The SM contains instructions and standards for the measurement of Crown forest resources,
provides instructions for the authorized movement of Crown forest resources and sets out
the requirements for conducting scaling audits.

Manual Revision

The four manuals are revised, improved, and updated based on experiences in using the
manuals, and as new information becomes available. Revisions to the manuals will be made
in accordance with the CFSA regulation requiring public review and comment.

Forest Management

Forest Management is conducted in an adaptive management cycle. A FMP is prepared by a
plan author who is a registered professional forester, who certifies that the FMP provides for
the sustainability of the Crown forest. The FMP is implemented as scheduled in the annual
work schedule and as reported in the annual report. Following year five, the implementation
of the FMP to date is assessed and a determination is made as to whether the
implementation of the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest and
recommendations for future planning are provided. The next FMP is prepared in
consideration of recommendations from the year five annual report; changes to the forest
condition; updates to science and policy; and specific efforts to confirm, update, or revise
management objectives and practices.

Figure 1 provides an overview of the adaptive management cycle as it pertains to the
provision of forest sustainability in FMPs.
Climate Change Considerations

Ontario recognizes climate change as a challenge requiring government action. Ontario’s Climate Change Strategy commits the province to contributing to global greenhouse gas emission reductions by preparing for a changing climate and continuing research to help understand climate change and its effect on the environment.

Ontario’s efforts to address climate change are focused on adaptation and mitigation. Adaptation involves practices and behaviours to reduce vulnerabilities and risks associated with climate change. Mitigation refers to efforts to reduce, or prevent emissions of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere or increase sequestration.

Healthy, resilient forests are best able to resist and adapt to climate change impacts. Ontario’s sustainable forest management framework has been designed to ensure a healthy,
and therefore, resilient forest. At the foundation of that framework is the CFSA that directs
the conservation of large, healthy, and diverse forests and their associated ecological
processes and biological diversity. Building from this foundation, the forest management
guides - which are required to be used by each planning team when they develop a FMP -
describe in more detail the objectives (e.g., diverse range of forest types and ages) and
practices (e.g., conserve soil and water resources) that are consistent with a healthy,
resilient forest. This FMPM then describes the process and standards used to incorporate
Ontario’s sustainable forest management framework into local decision making. All of this
direction provides the flexibility to adapt local forest management actions to both resist and
respond to potential climate change impacts. Regular monitoring, including that specified in
this FMPM, provides the necessary feedback to evaluate the effectiveness of local decisions
and Ontario’s overall sustainable forest management framework in achieving healthy and
resilient forests.

In addition to the monitoring specified in the FMPM, the MNRF undertakes a program of
effectiveness monitoring for the forest management guides to ensure that the direction in
the guides is effective. The MNRF also considers climate change during the reviews of forest
management guides. Declaration Order MNR-75 also requires the MNRF to: support a
science program to investigate the role of forests in climate change; support the
government’s efforts towards climate change mitigation through the sharing of information
and reporting on forest carbon balances; supporting and implementing a growth and yield
program that is influenced by climate change; and reporting on how the outcomes of our
science and information sharing have informed forest policy (e.g., FMPM), guides or
operational practices (i.e., adaptive management).

In addition, the way Ontario’s Crown forests are managed can influence the amount of
carbon that is released into the atmosphere, and stored in trees and harvested wood
products – i.e. mitigation. Sustainable forest management, supported by the framework
described in this FMPM, can help mitigate climate change.

The MNRF continues to improve the understanding of climate change and its effect on
Ontario’s Crown forests working with other agencies and partners on research studies and
sharing information. The sustainable forest management framework will be adapted to
reflect this improved understanding over time to ensure the long-term health of Ontario’s
Crown forests.
**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FOREWORD</td>
<td>ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual</td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-in Provisions</td>
<td>A-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN</td>
<td>A-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION</td>
<td>A-79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN</td>
<td>A-105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>B-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-In Provisions</td>
<td>B-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>B-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>B-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION</td>
<td>B-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS</td>
<td>B-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY</td>
<td>B-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0 DOCUMENTATION</td>
<td>B-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY</td>
<td>B-47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES</td>
<td>B-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>**PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td>C-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>C-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-In Provisions</td>
<td>C-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN AMENDMENTS</td>
<td>C-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS</td>
<td>C-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS</td>
<td>C-26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS</td>
<td>C-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0 MID-PLAN CHECKS</td>
<td>C-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION</td>
<td>C-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION.....</td>
<td>C-50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

1 3.0 FIRST NATION AND MétIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN
2 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING ................................................................. F-20
3
4 PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS .......................... F-21
5
6 4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS ............................................................................. F-21
7
8 6.0 DOCUMENTATION ..................................................................................... F-22
9
10 PART E - MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ........................................ F-22

11 APPENDICES
12
13 Table of Contents ............................................................................................... App-1
14
15 Appendix I: Analysis Package Contents ................................................................. App-2
16
17 Appendix II: Social and Economic Description ..................................................... App-5
18
19 Appendix III: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form.................................... App-8
20
21 Appendix IV: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form .................. App-14
22
23 Appendix V: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits .......................... App-20
24
25 GLOSSARY OF TERMS ..................................................................................... Glossary-1
26
INTRODUCTION

The FMPM prescribes the requirements for Ontario’s forest management planning system including a detailed description of the planning process and the products. The forest management planning cycle, established by the manual, consists of planning, implementation, monitoring and reporting. The reporting component of this planning system includes evaluation of results and recommendations to be incorporated into a subsequent planning process to complete the cycle.

The FMPM provides direction based on the legislative requirements of the CFSA and the conditions of Declaration Order MNR-75.

The FMPM is intended to be implemented in a manner that is consistent with the requirements of the *Endangered Species Act, 2007* (ESA). The ESA protects species at risk and their habitats, and also allows the Minister to authorize activities that would otherwise be prohibited by the ESA, provided applicable legislated requirements are met (e.g., through permits issued under s. 17 of the ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit Instruments, or a Section 55 exemption regulation). Habitat regulations and policy developed under the ESA will contain additional direction. This direction will be available to the sustainable forest licensee through the local MNRF office.

The FMPM focuses on the delivery of the forest management component of higher-order provincial and regional land use and resource management policies and strategies and their successors including:

- MNRF Horizons 2020;
- MNRF Statement of Environmental Values;
- Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests;
- Old Growth Policy for Ontario’s Crown Forests; and

These policies and strategies, along with other local strategies, provide the overall context for the preparation of FMPs, including the determination of forest sustainability.

First Nation and Métis communities have unique rights and interests from other people in Ontario. These may include Aboriginal and treaty rights, recognized and affirmed in section 35 of the *Constitution Act, 1982* and interests as peoples with distinct cultures, histories, languages, perspectives, needs, and aspirations.

The FMPM describes the approach for working with First Nation and Métis communities to support their involvement in the forest management planning process in a manner that respects Aboriginal and treaty rights, and that assists the Crown in addressing its duty to consult obligations, where triggered.
INTRODUCTION

The geographic basis for a FMP is a management unit. FMPs will be prepared for each management unit within the area of the undertaking (AOU), as depicted in Schedule 1 of Declaration Order MNR-75, in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM. FMPs set out the forest management activities, including road access, timber harvest, and forest renewal, and maintenance that may occur on a management unit.

On designated management units which are not managed under a sustainable forest licence, the Crown or another designated party is responsible for the preparation and implementation of a FMP. For the purpose of this manual, the sustainable forest licensee is referenced as the party responsible for preparing and implementing FMPs. Where the requirements of this manual refer to the sustainable forest licensee, those requirements will apply to the MNRF or the party responsible for the preparation and implementation of a FMP.

All approvals reference the MNRF regional director, MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF district manager and/or MNRF district supervisor. In the case of the Algonquin Park Forest, the park superintendent will be considered to be the MNRF district manager, and the assistant superintendent will be considered to be the MNRF district supervisor, for the requirements of this manual.

FMPs are prepared for a ten-year period. The planning process normally takes 36 months and results in a FMP that contains the long-term management direction, locations of primary and branch road corridors, and details of operations.

The FMPM is divided into six major parts:

PART A provides direction for the preparation of FMPs, and describes requirements for:

• Preparing the forest management plan and planning of operations for the ten-year period;
• public consultation; and
• First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.

PART B provides the FMP content requirements, and describes requirements for:

• title, certification and approval pages;
• section headings and associated documentation;
• supplementary documentation;
• FMP summary; and
• FMP tables
INTRODUCTION

PART C provides the planning requirements for plan amendments, contingency plans, plan extensions, mid-plan checks, and unscheduled and early plan renewals, and describes the requirements for:

- administrative, minor, major, long-term management direction (LTMD), and deemed amendments;
- contingency plans and plan extensions;
- mid-plan checks;
- early plan renewals;
- public consultation; and
- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.

PART D provides direction for the scheduling of forest management operations on an annual basis, and describes requirements for:

- forest operations prescriptions;
- annual work schedules;
- prescribed burns;
- aerial herbicide and insecticide projects;
- insect pest management programs;
- public consultation; and
- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.

PART E provides direction for management unit annual reports and evaluation of forest management operations, as well as the condition of the forest, at regular intervals, and describes:

- requirements for all management unit annual reports;
- additional requirements for the year five and final year annual reports;
- submission and review requirements; and
- management unit annual report tables.

PART F provides management unit specific direction for Far North management units that are added to the AOU (e.g., the Whitefeather Forest), and describes additional requirements for:

- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning;
- development of the LTMD;
- planning of operations for the ten-year period;
• plan documentation; and
• management unit annual reports.

In addition to the Parts, the manual contains the following appendices:

I. Analysis Package Contents
II. Social and Economic Description
III. Road Supplementary Documentation Form
IV. Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form
V. Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

The manual also contains a glossary of terms.

The FMPM is intended to be used by those involved in forest management planning including registered professional foresters, other related professionals, stakeholders and the public.

By January 31 of each year, the MNRF will produce a list of management units as of April 1 of that year. This list identifies FMPs currently in preparation, and all FMPs expected to be initiated in that year. This list will be available to the public upon request.

Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual

The cyclical nature of forest management planning dictates that it will be a number of years before all requirements of this FMPM can be fully implemented for all management units across the province. The requirements of this FMPM will apply upon the effective date of this manual, unless otherwise directed by the phase-in provisions included at the beginning of each Part of this manual.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS ..................................................... 6
  Phase-in Provisions ........................................................................................................ 6

1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN ............................... 8
  1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning .............................................. 11
    1.1.1 Introduction ..................................................................................................... 11
    1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities ........................................... 11
    1.1.2 Planning Team ............................................................................................... 11
      1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference ................................................................................ 12
      1.1.2.2 Project Plan ............................................................................................. 13
    1.1.3 Local Citizens’ Committee ............................................................................ 14
    1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements ................................................................. 15
    1.1.5 Decision Support Systems ............................................................................ 16
    1.1.6 Progress Checkpoints .................................................................................. 17
    1.1.7 Analysis Package ......................................................................................... 17
    1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information ......................................... 18
      1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction ................................................................................ 18
      1.1.8.2 Provincial Audits and Reports .................................................................. 19
      1.1.8.3 Forest Operations and Silviculture ............................................................ 19
      1.1.8.4 Management Unit Annual Reports ............................................................ 20
      1.1.8.5 Planning Inventory .................................................................................. 20
      1.1.8.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information ............................................... 21
      1.1.8.7 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk ..................................... 21
      1.1.8.8 Other Resource Inventories and Information .......................................... 21
      1.1.8.9 Values Information ............................................................................... 22
      1.1.8.10 Roads and Water Crossings Inventory .................................................. 23
      1.1.8.11 Social and Economic Description ........................................................... 23
      1.1.8.12 Historic Forest Condition ..................................................................... 24
      1.1.8.13 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report ....................... 24
    1.1.9 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each First Nation and Métis ... 25
      1.1.10 Stage One – Invitation to Participate ......................................................... 25
    1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .......... 25
      1.2.1 Introduction ................................................................................................. 25
      1.2.2 Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition ...................................... 26
        1.2.2.1 Forest Units ............................................................................................ 26
        1.2.2.2 Management Decision Information ....................................................... 26
        1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Classes .................................................................... 28
      1.2.3 Management Considerations ....................................................................... 28
        1.2.3.1 Modified Fire Response ......................................................................... 29
      1.2.4 Base Model ................................................................................................ 29
        1.2.4.1 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield .................................................... 30
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.2.4.2 Forest Dynamics–Natural Forest Succession</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.4.3 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.4.4 Silvicultural Ground Rules</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.4.5 Silvicultural Options</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.5 Forest Sustainability</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.5.1 Developing Management Objectives</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management Zones</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desired Forest and Benefits Meeting</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Desired Levels</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harvest Eligibility Criteria</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.5.2 Development of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objective Assessment</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available Harvest Area</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spatial Assessment</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social and Economic Assessment</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk Assessment</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.5.3 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.7 Summary of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.8 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1 Introduction</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.3.2 Contingency Area</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.3.4 Silvicultural Trial Areas</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.5 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Operations, and Conditions on Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from a Forest Management Guide</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Species at Risk</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from Other Planning Exercises</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operational Prescriptions and Conditions Developed by the Planning Team</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silvicultural Ground Rules</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions on Regular Operations</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions on Regular Operations for Species at Risk</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residual Forest for Planned Clearcuts</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

1.3.6 Roads.................................................................................................................. 60
   1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors .............................................................................. 60
   1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors .............................................................................. 61
   1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads......................... 62
   1.3.6.4 Operational Roads ..................................................................................... 63
   1.3.6.5 Existing Roads ............................................................................................ 64
      Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings ....................................................... 65
   1.3.6.6 Forestry Aggregate Pits ............................................................................. 65
      Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits ........................................... 66
      Aggregate Extraction Areas .............................................................................. 66
      Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits ............................................................... 67
   1.3.6.7 Use Management Strategies ...................................................................... 67
   1.3.7 Expenditures .................................................................................................. 68
   1.3.8 Spatial Assessment ....................................................................................... 68
   1.3.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management
      Direction .............................................................................................................. 69
   1.3.10 Determination of Sustainability ................................................................... 69
   1.3.11 Summary Map ............................................................................................. 70
   1.3.12 Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations .......... 71

1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft
   Forest Management Plan .......................................................................................... 71
   1.4.1 Introduction .................................................................................................... 71
   1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan ........................................... 71
   1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan .......................................... 72
   1.4.4 MNRF Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan .................................... 72
      1.4.4.1 MNRF’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations .................................... 73
   1.4.5 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary ........................ 73
   1.4.6 Availability of the Draft Forest Management Plan ....................................... 74
      1.4.7 Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest Management
      Plan ...................................................................................................................... 74

1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management
   Plan ......................................................................................................................... 74
   1.5.1 Introduction .................................................................................................... 74
   1.5.2 Final List of Required Alterations .................................................................. 74
   1.5.3 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan
      Summary ............................................................................................................... 75
   1.5.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan .............. 76
   1.5.5 Distribution of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan .................... 77
   1.5.6 Stage Five – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan ...... 77

1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan ....................................... 78

2.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .................................................................................. 79
   2.1 Introduction ....................................................................................................... 79
   2.2 Local Citizens’ Committee ................................................................................. 79
      2.2.1 Introduction .................................................................................................. 79
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

3.2 Planning Team ................................................................. 106
3.3 Local Citizens’ Committee.................................................. 107
3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning ................................................................................................................ 107
3.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Customized Consultation Approach ...... 109
3.5.1 Forest Management Plans ................................................ 109
3.5.1.1 Consultation .................................................................................................. 110
3.5.1.1.1 Stage One – Invitation to Participate ............................................................ 110
3.5.1.1.2 Preparation of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .......... 110
3.5.1.1.3 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction ...... 110
3.5.1.1.4 Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ........ 111
3.5.1.1.5 Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan .... 111
3.5.1.1.6 Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan .... 112
3.6 Documentation ..................................................................................................... 112
3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report ..................... 112
3.6.2 Social and Economic Description ................................................................. 113
3.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values ............. 113
3.6.4 Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement ......................................... 115

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Preparation of a Forest Management Plan ..... 10
Figure A-2: Long-Term Management Direction .................................................. 27
Figure A-3: Indicators of Objective Achievement ............................................... 35
Figure A-4: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages ................................................. 101
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

Part A of this manual describes the process for the preparation of a forest management plan (FMP). Section 1.0 describes the requirements for preparing the 10-year FMP. Section 2.0 describes public consultation requirements for preparing a 10-year FMP. Section 3.0 describes the opportunities for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning.

The FMP tables referenced in Part A are included in Part B, Section 8.0.

Phase-in Provisions

Forest management plans scheduled for renewal prior to April 1, 2020 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of the FMPM (2009), except as follows:

- For any request for issue resolution, or an individual environmental assessment, that is received after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM), the requirements of Part A, Section 2.4 of this FMPM will apply.

- For forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2019, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 through 1.6 of this FMPM will apply and the following sections of this FMPM will apply to the extent reasonably possible:
  - Part A, Section 2.0 Public Consultation
  - Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and Consultation in Forest Management Planning

Where the renewal of a forest management plan is rescheduled to April 1, 2020, due to a delay in its preparation, and the proposed long-term management direction for that forest management plan has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009) and has been endorsed by the regional director prior to April 1, 2019, the forest management plan will continue to be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009), except as follows:

- The requirements of Part A, Section 2.4 of this FMPM will apply to any request for issue resolution, or an individual environmental assessment, that is received after the effective date of this FMPM.

- The requirements of the following sections of this FMPM will apply:
  - For forest management plans originally scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2019, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 through 1.6 of this FMPM will apply and the following sections of this FMPM will apply to the extent reasonably possible:
    - Part A, Section 2.0 Public Consultation
Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and Consultation in Forest Management Planning

Subject to the foregoing phase-in provisions, forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2020, will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of this FMPM, except as follows:

- Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and Consultation in Forest Management Planning will apply to the extent reasonable possible.
1.0 PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

A FMP will be prepared in an open and consultative fashion by the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) or by an organization authorized by MNRF. FMPs will normally be prepared every 10 years, for a 10-year period. A FMP will include the long-term management direction (LTMD) for the management unit and the planned operations for the activities of access, harvest, renewal, and maintenance. There are five stages of consultation during the preparation of a FMP.

Planning efforts from current FMPs will be considered in the development of the new FMP. A FMP will be prepared utilizing a review of the current plan, confirming, updating or revising the management direction as appropriate, using the best available information (e.g., science, new forest management guides, management unit annual reports).

Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the Endangered Species Act, 2007 (ESA), the components of the FMP that specifically address the requirements ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA along with any applicable policy requirements will be identified in the FMP (Part B, Figure B-4). If a FMP is designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument, any conditions in the FMP that address the requirements ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA that are not implemented prior to the expiry of the FMP will be made conditions of the next FMP.

If a species that could be affected by the forest operations authorized by a FMP is added to, or reclassified on, the Species at Risk in Ontario (SARO) List such that it receives new protections under the ESA, the FMP will be assessed to determine whether the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are satisfied. If the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are satisfied, no further planning is required (e.g., FMP amendment). If the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are not satisfied, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0) and a revision to the annual work schedule (AWS) (Part D, Section 3.5) may be required.

The preparation, review and approval of the 10-year FMP takes about 36 months. The timetable for the preparation of a FMP, based on an ideal situation, is outlined in Figure A-1. In addition to the 36 months, time is required to assemble background information and update the planning inventory.

Section 1.1 describes the process to be followed and products that will be available for stage one of consultation.

Section 1.2 describes the process to be followed to develop the LTMD, including the identification of preferred and optional areas for harvest. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for stage two of consultation.
Section 1.3 describes the process to be followed for identifying the areas of operations for access, harvest, renewal and tending for the 10-year period. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for stage three of consultation.

Section 1.4 describes the requirements for preparing and submitting the draft FMP, and the requirements for MNRF’s review. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for stage four of consultation.

Section 1.5 describes the process for plan revision and approval, and the products that will be available for stage five of consultation.
Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Preparation of a Forest Management Plan

Preparation of the Ten-Year Forest Management Plan

Stage One: Invitation to Participate

Stage Two: Review of Long-Term Management Direction

Stage Three: Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage Four: Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

Stage Five: Inspection of MNRF Approved Plan

NOTE: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY
1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning

1.1.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information, in preparation for stage one of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.1).

Additional requirements regarding the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information for Far North management units that are added to the area of the undertaking (AOU) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities

A description of the management responsibilities for the management unit will be prepared. The description will include responsibilities of MNRF, the sustainable forest licensee, and other forest companies, if applicable.

1.1.2 Planning Team

A FMP will be prepared by a plan author, who will be assisted by an interdisciplinary planning team and a local citizens' committee (LCC) (Part A, Section 2.2). In addition, advisors with a specialty in a particular subject area will play a role in providing advice and support during plan preparation.

The plan author must be a registered professional forester, licenced under the Professional Foresters Act, 2000. For plans prepared by an organization such as a sustainable forest licensee, the organization will assign the plan author. If the FMP is prepared by MNRF, the MNRF district manager will assign the plan author.

The MNRF district manager will appoint an interdisciplinary planning team, which is a working body, with all members participating in plan preparation. The team will normally include individuals with expertise in forest management, information management, fish and wildlife, species at risk, biology, forest ecology, lands administration, parks and natural heritage, fire management, enforcement, forest modeling and analysis, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation. The level of participation of team members will vary depending on their particular area of expertise. Planning team members should be familiar with the management unit. The planning team will include a registered professional forester employed by MNRF.

The MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity for the LCC to nominate one of its members to participate on the planning team. In addition, when applicable and where
possible, the MNRF district manager will invite a person(s) who collectively represents
overlapping licensees and beneficiaries of MNRF wood supply commitments that do not
have ownership in the company holding the sustainable forest licence on the management
unit to participate on the planning team.

The MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity for a representative of each First
Nation and Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or
traditional uses, including established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights, may
be affected by the preparation and implementation of the FMP, to participate on the
planning team (Part A, Section 3.2).

The MNRF district manager will appoint the chair of the planning team. The chair of the
planning team ensures the FMP will be prepared in accordance with the terms of reference
(Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The MNRF regional resources manager will appoint a project manager for the preparation
of the FMP. The project manager, with assistance from the plan author and planning team,
will develop and maintain a project plan for the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section
1.1.2.2).

Representatives from MNRF and other ministries may be invited to participate as advisors
to the planning team and/or plan reviewers. This advisory role is available to any provincial
government ministry or agency, including those agencies responsible for Indigenous affairs.
The MNRF district manager will consult with other government ministries or agencies to
determine whether those organizations have specific interests that should be addressed in
the FMP. If the ministries or agencies have concerns, they will be invited to participate on
the planning team. Representatives from the Ministry of the Environment and Climate
Change (MOECC) may attend planning team meetings at their discretion.

The MNRF regional resources manager, in consultation with the sustainable forest licensee,
will establish a steering committee for the preparation of the FMP. The steering committee
will normally include a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, a representative of
the MNRF regional director, and the MNRF district manager. The steering committee will
monitor the preparation of the FMP and will resolve issues and disagreements among
planning team members to ensure plan preparation remains in accordance with the project
plan. The steering committee will seek input from First Nation and Métis community
representative(s) on the planning team when resolving issues and disagreements among
planning team members.

1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

The plan author, with assistance from the planning team, will develop the terms of
reference for the preparation of the FMP.
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

The terms of reference will contain:

(a) the names and affiliations of the plan author, planning team members, steering committee members, the chair, the project manager, MNRF advisors, other advisors (e.g., staff from other government ministries, agencies and municipalities) and MNRF plan reviewers;
(b) a description of the decision support system that will be used, and a discussion of the manner in which they will be used (Part A, Section 1.1.5). The type of decision support system used in planning may influence the products required at specific progress checkpoints (e.g., spatial model outputs);
(c) the process for resolving disagreements between planning team members, including the involvement of the MNRF regional resources manager and/or the steering committee;
(d) key plan preparation deliverables and identification of issues that may affect plan preparation; and
(e) a communications plan, which outlines the costs and timing for communications efforts, including French and Indigenous translation, mailings, information centres and printing.

A senior official from the plan author’s organization will sign the draft terms of reference to acknowledge the responsibilities of the plan author and other members of the organization on the planning team. The draft terms of reference will be submitted to the district manager and regional resources manager for review at least 60 days before issuing the first public notice. The MNRF will review and comment on the draft terms of reference within 15 days. If changes are required, the plan author will make the changes, obtain the signatures of the planning team members and the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, and submit the final version to the MNRF district manager and regional resources manager. When the changes have been made to the satisfaction of the MNRF, the MNRF district manager and the MNRF regional resources manager will sign and endorse the terms of reference, and submit it to the MNRF regional director for approval.

The terms of reference will be approved prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal public consultation process.

1.1.2.2 Project Plan

The project manager, with assistance from the plan author and planning team, will develop the project plan for the preparation of the FMP.

The project plan will contain:

(a) a schedule for plan preparation, including MNRF review and approval;
(b) a schedule for progress checkpoints, and identification of who will be responsible for confirmation of satisfactory completion of the required information (Part A, Section 1.1.6);

(c) a schedule for formal public consultation including any additional opportunities;

(d) responsibilities and specific tasks of each planning team member, with deadlines for preparation. Planning team members will acknowledge their roles and responsibilities with their signatures on the project plan. Key tasks for the preparation of the FMP will be itemized, including identification of:
   (i) who will be the liaison with First Nation and Métis communities;
   (ii) who will be the liaison with resource-based tourist operators;
   (iii) who will be the contact for the LCC;
   (iv) who is responsible for notification of plan advisors;
   (v) who will be responsible for updating MNRF’s mailing list, the preparation of public notices and the summary of public consultation;
   (vi) who will be required to attend information centres;
   (vii) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific products (e.g., the social and economic description, maps) in the preparation of the FMP;
   (viii) who will participate in the development of the LTMD, and tasks they will be responsible for;
   (ix) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific sections of the FMP; and
   (x) who will be responsible for preparing the Statement of Environmental Values consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0);

(e) identification of a forest analysis and modeling task team, which will normally include staff from the sustainable forest licensee and MNRF, and their associated responsibilities;

(f) identification of other task teams (e.g., species at risk task team, Areas of Concern (AOC) task team, etc.), if required, and associated responsibilities;

(g) identification of the responsibility for issuing the public notice for each stage of the formal public consultation process; and

(h) the roles and responsibilities of MNRF plan reviewers, including designation of a coordinator for the lists of required alterations.

Throughout plan preparation, the project plan will be updated to reflect changes to the preparation schedule, and changes in planning team membership and responsibilities.

1.1.3 Local Citizens’ Committee

A LCC will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team during the preparation of the FMP. Normally, the committee will already be in place. The committee may be established for one FMP, or it may be an MNRF district committee established to
assist in the preparation of FMPs for all management units in the district. The MNRF district manager may establish multiple LCCs or sub-committees for a management unit. The role of the LCC in the preparation and implementation of the FMP is described in detail in Part A, Section 2.2.

Prior to commencing the preparation of a new FMP, the MNRF district manager will review the membership of the LCC and fill any vacancies. The review of the membership will ensure that a range and balance of interests is represented on the committee. New members will be appointed by the MNRF district manager. Part A, Section 3.3 describes the process for reviewing the First Nation and Métis community representation on the LCC.

The committee may nominate a representative to serve as a member of the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2). The LCC, with assistance from MNRF, will prepare the terms of reference for the committee (Part A, Section 2.2.4).

1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements

The *Tourism and Forestry Industry Memorandum of Understanding* is an agreement between the government, the tourism industry and the forest industry on the development of resource stewardship agreements and related matters.

To initiate the development of a resource stewardship agreement, the sustainable forest licensee will write a letter to each resource-based tourism operator in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or uses may be affected by the preparation and implementation of the new FMP or previous FMPs. An updated list of resource-based tourism operators, both those with facilities on the management unit and those without facilities who use the natural resources of the management unit, will be provided to the sustainable forest licensee by the Ministry of Tourism, Culture, and Sport.

The MNRF’s forest management guide relating to the protection of resource-based tourism values provides guidance for the development of specific proposals and prescriptions related to forest management activities in a resource stewardship agreement. The prescriptions developed in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for review by the public and First Nation and Métis communities during the preparation of the FMP.

The MNRF will ensure that the parties are aware of the opportunities for the public and First Nation and Métis communities to review specific proposals and prescriptions in a resource stewardship agreement related to forest management activities.
1.1.5 Decision Support Systems

Decision support systems used in forest management planning are information systems that utilize strategic models, analysis tools, and databases in an interactive, analytical process, to support decision making. In forest management planning, the planning team uses decision support systems to facilitate the strategic analysis in the development of the LTMD and the planning of operations.

Components (e.g., models or analysis tools) of the decision support system to be used for any of the following tasks will be approved by the director of MNRF’s Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch prior to inclusion in the terms of reference:

(a) projection of forest conditions through time;
(b) determination of the required types and levels of access, harvest, renewal, and tending activities;
(c) determination of the available harvest area; and
(d) assessment of sustainability.

The decision support system used in the development of the LTMD will be able to produce the required products and analysis, and:

(a) be capable of tracking the entire forested and non-forested landbase of a management unit through time;
(b) evaluate all forested areas, whether managed or other (FMP-1), for their contribution to forest diversity and wildlife habitat;
(c) evaluate all managed forested areas (FMP-1) for their contribution to timber production;
(d) produce projections of forest structure and composition for a minimum of 160 years;
(e) account for natural disturbance agents, such as forest fire, windthrow, and insects;
(f) incorporate current and potential levels of silvicultural investments;
(g) be capable of representing shelterwood and uneven-aged silvicultural systems (if applicable to the management unit);
(h) be capable of representing alternative LTMDs; and
(i) be capable of representing the movement of wood from management zones to destination(s).

The choice of decision support system used in planning may influence the requirements of specific progress checkpoints. The planning team may identify additional progress checkpoints to accommodate specific decision support system needs.
1.1.6 Progress Checkpoints

Progress checkpoints are key steps in the development and preliminary endorsement of the LTMD of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.2). The appropriate planning team members and advisors, as identified in the project plan, must confirm the satisfactory completion of the required information for each progress checkpoint and document their support, prior to receiving the confirmation of the satisfactory completion of the next check point. The MNRF regional resources manager will resolve any disagreements regarding the satisfactory completion of the required information.

The progress checkpoints are:

(a) Planning Inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.8.5);
(b) Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition (Part A, Section 1.2.2);
(c) Base Model Inventory and Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4);
(d) Management Objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1);
(e) Support for the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction, Determination of Sustainability and Primary Road Corridors (Part A, Section 1.2.7); and
(f) Preliminary Endorsement of Long-term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.3.2).

The satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoints (a) through (e) will be documented in the analysis package (Part A, Section 1.1.7). The MNRF regional director’s preliminary endorsement of the LTMD will confirm the satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoint (f).

The planning team may identify additional progress checkpoints in the planning team terms of reference.

During the development of the LTMD, previous steps and progress checkpoints in the planning process may be required to be revisited if new, changed or corrected information is available, which will significantly alter the LTMD.

1.1.7 Analysis Package

The analysis package summarizes the collaborative analysis conducted by the forest analysis and modeling task team in the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2). The analysis package also documents task team support of progress checkpoints (a) through (e) (Part A, Section 1.1.6).

The analysis package will be updated throughout the development of the LTMD. Appendix I outlines the required contents of the analysis package.
1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information

The project manager will coordinate the review and confirmation, update, or revision of the background information in the current FMP for use in the preparation of the new FMP. The background information that will be available may vary across the province, depending on the relevancy for the management unit.

The background information that will be available for the period of plan preparation includes:

(a) sources of direction;
(b) provincial audits and reports prepared by or for MNRF;
(c) forest management guides, including new forest management guides that are scheduled for implementation;
(d) the management unit annual report for the final year of implementation of the previous FMP, management unit annual reports for the current FMP, and previous reports of past forest operations;
(e) forest resources inventory;
(f) fish and wildlife inventory information;
(g) inventories and information for species at risk;
(h) other resource inventories and information, including information on cultural heritage resource values, and mineral resource assessment maps;
(i) updated values maps and a resource-based tourism values map;
(j) roads and road water crossing inventory;
(k) a social and economic description;
(l) MNRF information describing current industrial wood requirements;
(m) information on the historic forest condition; and
(n) the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s) (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction

*The Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994* (CFSA) and MNRF’s Environmental Assessment Act Requirements for Forest Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (Declaration Order MNR-75) provide legal direction for the management of Ontario’s Crown forests.

The MNRF will ensure that documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making are available to the planning team and the LCC at the outset of planning. Those sources of direction include:

(a) MNRF’s provincial goals, objectives and policies for natural resource management, particularly those relevant to forest management, such as the Statement of Environmental Values for the MNRF, MNRF’s current corporate...
long-term strategic policy (e.g., Horizons 2020), Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests, and MNRF resource management policies (e.g., Ontario Provincial Parks: Management Statements, Ontario’s and MNRF’s action plan and strategies on climate change, Provincial Wood Supply Strategy, and Old Growth Policy for Ontario’s Crown Forests or their successors);

(b) Crown land use direction contained in Ontario’s Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, or its successor;

(c) the existing approved FMP for the management unit, with particular emphasis on the section that addresses management objectives;

(d) all other approved or draft resource management plans (e.g., fisheries management plans, park management plans, statements of conservation interest) that are relevant to the management unit;

(e) any applicable statement that has been published under subsection 11(8) of the ESA, all applicable habitat regulations made under the ESA, and any relevant ESA policy direction;

(f) independent forest audits, action plans and related status reports for the management unit;

(g) approaches for dealing with wood supply issues from wood supply strategy documents developed for each MNRF administrative region;

(h) where available, strategic business direction for forest-based businesses dependent on the management unit, in particular the forest industry;

(i) the results of the negotiations between MNRF and First Nation and Métis communities; and

(j) other relevant information (e.g., legal agreements or licences regarding resource use on the management unit).

1.1.8.2 Provincial Audits and Reports

Audits or reports prepared by or for MNRF pertaining to forest management generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Reports on Forest Management, State of the Forest Report) are available on the Ontario Government website.

1.1.8.3 Forest Operations and Silviculture

The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual sets out a list of guidance and direction (e.g., forest management guides) to be referenced in the development of forest management strategies and prescriptions, and implementation of forest management activities.

The MNRF will prepare a list of guides that are applicable to the management unit. The list will contain the titles, the specific editions of the guides, and the internet site where the guides can be accessed.
1.1.8.4 Management Unit Annual Reports

The most recent management unit annual reports for the management unit will be available for use in the preparation of the FMP. The year five management unit annual report for the current FMP and the management unit annual report for the final year of implementation for the previous FMP, or reports of past forest operations for the previous 15 years, will also be available. In particular, the conclusions and recommendations in the year five management unit annual report (e.g., the review of renewal and tending activities, spatial distribution of harvest areas) will provide information for confirming or changing the LTMD.

1.1.8.5 Planning Inventory

The planning inventory for the management unit provides information required for forest management planning, including forest modeling, habitat modeling and forest diversity analyses. The planning inventory contains updated forest resources inventory information as a result of forest management activities and natural disturbances. The planning inventory also contains expected changes, based on anticipated harvest for the remainder of the current FMP. The detailed technical requirements, responsibility and timing for preparation and submission of the planning inventory are described in the Forest Information Manual (FIM). Development of the planning inventory will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix I).

The Crown forest portion of the management unit is the landbase used for decision-making in the FMP. For forest management planning purposes, the Crown forest is categorized as areas managed for timber production and other areas. Other areas include national and provincial parks and conservation reserves, and areas that have been designated through legal or policy means, or a land use decision, as unavailable for timber production. The areas managed for timber production include all remaining Crown forest lands.

The total area of Crown forest on the management unit can contribute to the achievement of non-timber objectives in the FMP. For the planning team to consider provincial parks and conservation reserves on the management unit in the achievement of management objectives, forest inventory information for these areas must be available.

**CHECKPOINT: PLANNING INVENTORY**

This progress checkpoint will include information and products associated with the planning inventory.
1.1.8.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information

Fish and wildlife inventory information for the management unit will be available for use in planning. The values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9) is the source of site-specific information for the fish and wildlife species present on the management unit.

Fish and wildlife inventory information which will be available includes:
(a) known fish and wildlife species on the management unit;
(b) fish and wildlife species of local concern; and
(c) the slope of shoreland areas.

Sources for fish inventory information include lake, stream and other aquatic habitat surveys. Sources for wildlife inventory information include population, range and habitat surveys.

1.1.8.7 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk

Inventories and information for species at risk on the management unit will be available for use in planning. The MNRF’s Natural Heritage Information Centre is the primary source of information for species at risk. The values map (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), is the source of site-specific information for the flora, fish and wildlife species present on the management unit. This information will contribute to the development of management objectives and the preparation of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.

The species inventories and information which will be available include known sites of occurrence of flora, fish and wildlife species, and known sites of occurrence of their habitat.

Publication of information on some values may be detrimental to their conservation, in which case the information will not normally be publicly available.

1.1.8.8 Other Resource Inventories and Information

Other resource inventories and information for the management unit will be available for use in planning. This information will contribute to the update of values information, and the development of management objectives for the forest.

The other resource inventories and information which will be available include:
(a) information on each park and protected area, including the name, designation (e.g., provincial park, conservation reserve), class (e.g., wilderness, recreation) and area (hectares);
(b) cultural heritage resource values inventory information, including:
(i) known archaeological sites and cultural heritage landscapes;
(ii) First Nation and Métis values information; and
(iii) areas of archaeological potential; and
(c) mineral resource assessment maps.

Mineral resource assessment maps are available from the Ministry of Northern Development, and Mines.

1.1.8.9 Values Information

The MNRF will produce a values map, or series of maps, for the management unit, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The values maps provide a summary of the geographic locations of known values for the management unit, including provincial parks and conservation reserves on the management unit, which will be considered in forest management planning, and about which further inventory information is available. The values maps are intended to be used primarily as background information for planning, and will also be used for display purposes and to solicit additional information about values. The types of values information normally portrayed on the values maps are listed in the FIM. No listing of values can be definitive. For the purposes of forest management planning, it can be any feature, entity or forest condition that could be impacted by forest operations. Base features can be considered values; lakes are an example. The list of values considered in forest management planning varies by management unit, landscape features, and stakeholders involved. The list provided in the FIM technical specifications is not all inclusive; it is a guide to the types of values considered.

Values information will be updated as information is assembled during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. The MNRF will update and provide the most current and relevant information available on values, including cultural heritage resource values, at each stage of public consultation. Information on values will generally be available to the public. When publication of the location of particular values may be detrimental to their conservation, they will not be portrayed on the values maps.

The values maps will be accompanied by text that includes:

(a) a list of references to the sources of information on the values maps or otherwise available in the database;
(b) identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and
(c) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing.

With regard to old growth forest values, all sites which contain old growth red and white pine forest communities, as defined in the Old Growth Forest Definitions for Ontario (technical report), will be identified on the values maps for the management unit.
A separate values map for resource-based tourism values will be produced by MNRF to support the development of resource stewardship agreements (Part A, Section 1.1.4) and development of operational prescriptions and conditions to protect tourism values.

The most up-to-date versions of the values maps will be maintained at the appropriate MNRF office and will be available for public viewing.

1.1.8.10 Roads and Water Crossings Inventory

The planning team will confirm and update the existing roads and water crossings inventory for the management unit, using the most up-to-date information available. For the purpose of a roads and water crossings inventory, existing roads and water crossings are those that fall within the Public Lands Act, 1990 (PLA), Section 48 definition of a road and are reasonably capable of providing access for licenced highway vehicles. For each road or road network, the planning team will confirm the:

- road or road network identifier;
- road class;
- geographic location;
- responsibility assignment for the road and water crossings; and
- use management strategy.

Existing roads, approved primary road corridors and access restrictions on roads will be portrayed. Roads and water crossings that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee will be differentiated in the inventory.

1.1.8.11 Social and Economic Description

A social and economic description will be prepared for the management unit, using available information, in accordance with the requirements of Appendix II. The social and economic description will describe the social and economic characteristics of:

- communities that derive substantial social and economic benefits (e.g., employment, municipal taxes) related to the forest industry or forest management activities;
- forest resource-processing facilities; and
- the other industrial and non-industrial users of the forest.

The description will be considered in the development of the LTMD and the planning of forest operations.
Municipal economic development officers and northern development officers from the Ministry of Northern Development and Mines may provide, verify or update information for the social and economic description. Forest users and planning team advisors may also provide some of the information.

1.1.8.12 Historic Forest Condition

The description of the historic forest condition will be used in the development of the LTMD for the forest (Part A, Section 1.2). The historic forest condition will provide insight into the natural dynamics of the forest, the effects of past forest management, and the current forest composition. Historical management unit information will also be useful in understanding trends and changes in forest composition, and past use of forest resources from the management unit.

The planning team will review, and confirm, update or revise the summary of the historic forest condition. A revised summary of the history of the forest will be prepared if required. The summary will include a discussion of how the historic forest condition, past human activities, developments and natural processes relate to the current forest condition, and the associated management implications.

A summary of the history of the forest on the management unit will address:

(a) historical use of forest resources;
(b) historical development of access;
(c) historical spatial distribution of forest harvest;
(d) historical natural disturbances, including size and frequency information; and
(e) changes to the forest, including:
   (i) forest type, structure and composition;
   (ii) forest landscape pattern;
   (iii) forest productivity;
   (iv) populations of flora and fauna;
   (v) wildlife habitat; and
   (vi) forest biodiversity.

1.1.8.13 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report

Part A, Section 3.6.1 describes the requirements for the preparation of the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s).
1.1.9 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each First Nation and Métis Community

Part A, Section 3.0 describes the requirements to involve First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning.

1.1.10 Stage One – Invitation to Participate

After the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.1.1 to 1.1.9 have been completed, the planning team will commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.1, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

1.2.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the development of the LTMD for the management unit, in preparation for stage two of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.2). Figure A-2 provides an overview of the process involved in the development of the LTMD.

The LTMD will be consistent with legislation and policy; consider direction in forest management guides; balance social, economic and environmental considerations; and provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

The planning team will review the LTMD in the current FMP, and confirm, update, or revise forest classifications, forest model assumptions, and/or management objectives. This approach will facilitate stability and consistency in management direction in successive FMPs.

In the development of the LTMD, the current forest condition is described to provide context for the identification of desired forest and benefits, and the establishment of management objectives and indicators. Through strategic analysis, the LTMD will identify the levels of access, harvest, renewal and tending activities that will balance the achievement of management objectives. A preliminary determination of sustainability will examine whether the LTMD provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

Additional requirements regarding the development of the LTMD for Far North management units that are added to the AOU are described in Part F of this FMPM.
1.2.2  Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition

The planning inventory products are combined and updated with forest classification information to produce the base model inventory, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The base model inventory and landscape level information are used to describe the current forest condition.

The base model inventory and current forest condition provide context for the identification of desired forest and benefits and management objectives.

The development of the forest classifications will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix I).

A management unit land summary will be documented in FMP-1.

1.2.2.1 Forest Units

The forest unit provides the primary classification for assumptions regarding how the forest develops, through time and in response to treatment. Forest units are applied to the entire Crown forest on the management unit. The forest units will align with the regional standard forest unit classifications and provide the ability to assess the requirements of the forest management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale.

Forest units may be divided, where appropriate, into analysis units for modelling purposes. Analysis units refine forest units to more accurately project forest development. The degree to which forest units and analysis units are represented in the models depends on the strategic models used in the decision support system (i.e., spatial versus non-spatial).

Forest units are described in FMP-2. Forest units and analysis units will be provided in the base model inventory. The summary of managed Crown productive forest by forest unit is summarized in FMP-3.

1.2.2.2 Management Decision Information

Forest stands will be classified based on management decision information, such as silvicultural intensity, stage of management, and age. Silvicultural intensity means the projected yield and not the treatments to be implemented. Management decision information is provided in the base model inventory.
Figure A-2: Long-Term Management Direction

Stage One of Public Consultation

Planning Team
Local Citizens Committee

Background Information

Current Forest Condition

Desired Forest and Benefits Meeting

Management Objectives
Indicators and desirable levels

Target Setting

Proposed Long-term Management Direction

Strategic Analysis
Refine
Assessment of Objective Achievement

Risk Assessment

Endorsed Long-term Management Direction

Planning Inventory

Base Model Inventory

Analysis Package
1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Classes

Forest landscape classes are used to describe the current forest composition, structure and pattern at the landscape level. Landscape classes that are used to describe the current forest condition are defined in MNRF’s approved forest management guide(s) relating to landscape pattern and structure.

The forest landscape classes will be described (e.g., maps, figures and/or graphs) for use in the development of management objectives.

1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications

There may be other forest classifications to describe the current forest condition based on forest cover (e.g., habitat for wildlife species, habitat for forest-related species at risk). The requirement for other forest classifications will be determined by the planning team. The forest classifications will be described (e.g., maps, figures and/or graphs) for use in the development of management objectives.

CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR THE FOREST CLASSIFICATION AND CURRENT FOREST CONDITION

This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated with the forest classification in the base model inventory and the current forest condition (Part A Section 1.2.2).

1.2.3 Management Considerations

Management considerations are changes to the forest condition (e.g., large natural disturbance) or social, economic or environmental concerns that will be considered in the development of the LTMD. Management considerations will also be considered in the planning and implementation of operations.

Management considerations that may influence the development of the LTMD include:

(a) major changes in landbase;
(b) recent, large natural disturbances;
(c) access to remote tourism areas;
(d) species at risk;
(e) First Nation and Métis community interests;
(f) modified fire response;
(g) shifts in markets or utilization;
(h) other planning initiatives;
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

(i) funding for silviculture; and
(j) climate change.

Management considerations are often identified through the implementation of the current FMP. Other sources of information about management considerations include new science, new policy direction (e.g., ESA policy direction), independent forest audits and the associated action plans for the management unit, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s), and submissions from the LCC and the general public.

1.2.3.1 Modified Fire Response

The majority of Ontario’s forests are fire-dependent ecosystems that rely on periodic wildland fire as a renewal agent in the absence of forest management. Wildland fire can be used as a tool, where safe and appropriate, to support land and resource management objectives (e.g., hazard reduction, forest renewal, habitat management). The planning team, through dialogue with their local MNRF fire management representative, will determine if any candidate areas (landscape or site-specific) for modified fire response exist on the management unit. Modified fire response areas, if any, will be portrayed.

1.2.4 Base Model

The base model serves as the common starting point for the development of the LTMD. The base model will include assumptions related to the land base (e.g., ecological zones, land use decisions), forest dynamics (e.g., forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team. The planning team will review, and confirm, update or revise model assumptions from the current FMP. An analysis of past silviculture performance will provide the default silvicultural assumptions for the base model. The existing model assumptions will be reviewed in consideration of the best available science and information, new legislation, regulation and policy, and changes to forest condition and landbase.

Sensitivity analysis will be undertaken to provide insight on how key model assumptions influence how the forest develops naturally, and in response to forest management. Sensitivity analysis involves the modification of model inputs and examination of model outputs to develop and confirm model assumptions. The results of the sensitivity analysis supports the assumptions used in the base model.

The development of the base model will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix I).
1.2.4.1 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield

The combination of forest unit and silvicultural intensity (i.e., yield) will create a category of forest type called a silvicultural stratum. Yield curves or growth projections will be developed for each forest unit to predict the development of the forest through time. Growth and yield information from the provincially coordinated growth and yield program, applicable to the management unit, will be used in the development of the yield curves or growth projections.

The yield curves or growth projections will:

(a) be consistent with growth and yield models developed through Ontario’s growth and yield program;
(b) be developed using relevant data, collected to approved data collection standards and accepted modelling principles;
(c) be developed consistent with results of performance surveys;
(d) be validated with independent local data, when available;
(e) be developed to represent silvicultural strata;
(f) be developed by species to provide separate estimates for yield by broad size or product group;
(g) be developed to represent current utilization standards, and will provide separate estimates for yield in addition to current utilization standards (e.g., undersized and defect);
(h) be consistent with natural forest succession inputs and other assumptions (e.g., harvest eligibility); and
(i) provide resolution of information required to support the analytical tools used in planning and the development of regeneration standards.

Growth models or yield models not consistent with those developed through Ontario’s growth and yield program will require a sensitivity analysis and be subject to review and approval prior to use in the base model. The review of growth models or yield models for statistical and sampling considerations will be coordinated by the MNRF growth and yield program.

1.2.4.2 Forest Dynamics–Natural Forest Succession

Natural forest succession includes the changes in stand composition that occur through time as a result of aging, break-up, recruitment, and non-stand replacing natural disturbances. Natural forest succession also represents the natural succession of non-forested land types to forest. Natural forest succession can be represented in analysis tools as a transition from one forest unit to another (e.g., succession rule), and/or a change in species composition over time (e.g., yield curve).
To predict future forest conditions, succession assumptions will be developed for each silvicultural stratum applicable to the forest.

1.2.4.3 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance

Forest disturbance information for the managed forest includes stand replacing natural disturbances under fire suppression and post-disturbance succession. The MNRF’s forest management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale reflect expected rates of stand replacing natural disturbances (e.g., fire and insects). Landscape composition direction from MNRF’s forest management guide(s) that addresses the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale will be accounted for in the decision support system. Disturbances that are single-event or infrequent are reflected as they occur through inventory updates (e.g., windthrow).

1.2.4.4 Silvicultural Ground Rules

A silvicultural ground rule (SGR) identifies the current forest condition, silvicultural system, future forest condition at maturity (e.g., silvicultural stratum), development information, management standards, regeneration standards, and acceptable alternative harvest, renewal and tending treatments. SGRs identify regeneration standards for the assessment of establishment (at a time when composition can be determined) and performance (at a time when growth can be measured). Establishment is the period between harvest and the completion of silvicultural treatments. Performance is the period between establishment and when projected yield can be assessed. SGRs will be developed for applicable forest unit – ecosite combinations on the management unit and will form the basis of the silvicultural options in the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The recommendations from the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) will be incorporated in the development of SGRs. SGRs will be developed using the approved silvicultural guide(s).

The SGRs will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the direction of the plan author, using the silvicultural guide(s) identified by MNRF as applicable to the management unit. Planning efforts from current FMPs should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in the development of SGRs. Local knowledge and the experience gained by the planning team from past management practices will also be considered (e.g., results of silvicultural monitoring).

For each SGR, the most common silvicultural treatment package used on the management unit will be identified, as well as acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments for each of the harvest, renewal and tending activities. If a SGR includes a treatment not recommended in the applicable silvicultural guide(s), the treatment will be recorded as an exception. The rationale for that exception will be provided, and the monitoring program in the FMP will
describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment (Part B, Section 4.7.2). The SGRs will be documented in FMP-4.

1.2.4.5 Silvicultural Options

Silvicultural options will represent the broad options appropriate for the forest as described in the SGR(s) (FMP-4). Modelled silvicultural options exhibit the following characteristics:

(a) they apply to the same initial forest conditions (e.g., forest units and ecosites); and
(b) they achieve the same future forest conditions (e.g., silvicultural stratum, regeneration standard).

Each silvicultural option will identify the silvicultural stratum to which it applies and will have assumptions about the future forest condition, treatment costs, and success rates in response to treatments (e.g., post-harvest renewal transition rule). The silvicultural options of the base model will reflect the most commonly used SGR(s).

A registered professional forester will have undertaken and documented an analysis of silvicultural activities in the year five management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.3). The analysis will provide input to assist in determining the necessary levels of renewal and tending operations, and associated expenditures required. The management unit annual report also provides recommendations that will be used in the development of silvicultural assumptions.

The analysis of past silvicultural performance will serve as the default post-harvest renewal transition rules. The analysis of past silvicultural performance will consider:

(a) results of past silvicultural treatments;
(b) results of SGRs;
(c) assessments of regeneration results; and
(d) the relationship between new forest classifications and growth and yield assumptions and historic records.

Any adjustments from the default post-harvest renewal transition rules will be supported by rationale. The rationale for adjustments to the default inputs will be consistent with one of the following methods:

(a) analysis of additional empirical data/information (e.g., ecosite) using correlative techniques; or
(b) analysis incorporating expert opinion with empirical data/information using a causal framework (e.g., Bayesian belief network).
Where expert opinion is applied, the basis for an adjustment (e.g., ecosite limitations) will require monitoring and reporting, which may be satisfied by an existing monitoring program. The post-harvest renewal transition rules will be documented in FMP-5.

Silvicultural options will also specify the limits to which the option can be applied on the management unit (e.g., only ten percent of jack pine sites are suitable for seeding).

Sensitivity analysis of the treatments, costs and responses is required for proposed silvicultural options:

(a) which reflect silvicultural practices not recommended in silvicultural guide(s);
(b) where the outcome is uncertain; or
(c) where the amount of area to which the strategy applies is uncertain.

CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR BASE MODEL INVENTORY AND BASE MODEL

This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated with the base model and base model inventory (Part A, Section 1.2.4).

1.2.5 Forest Sustainability

The CFSA (section 2 (2)) requires sustainability of Crown forest to be determined in accordance with the FMPM. Sustainability is defined in the CFSA as “long term Crown forest health [which is] the condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem’s complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario”.

The CFSA presents two guiding principles for the determination of sustainability in Ontario:

(a) Large, healthy, diverse and productive Crown forests and their associated ecological processes and biological diversity should be conserved.
(b) The long term health and vigour of Crown forests should be provided for by using forest practices that, within the limits of silvicultural requirements, emulate natural disturbances and landscape patterns while minimizing adverse effects on plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values.

The FMP must provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit. Determinations of the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit will be made during the preparation of the FMP and following the implementation of forest operations.

The preliminary determination of sustainability during the preparation of the FMP is conducted during the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3) and updated, if
necessary, after operations are planned for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.10). The
determination is based on the assessment of objective achievement.

In the preparation of a FMP, the determination of sustainability involves:

(a) development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) that address:
   (i) CFSA objective categories and required indicators (Figure A-3); and
   (ii) other desired forest and benefits identified by the public, planning
        team and LCC;
(b) assessment of the achievement of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
(c) development of a proposed LTMD that balances the achievement of the
    management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
(d) concluding that the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on
    the management unit (Part A, Sections 1.2.5.3 and 1.3.10).

The conclusion is a determination that the FMP provides for the long-term Crown forest
health on the management unit, and has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and
social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (e.g., through
the application of forest management guides to protect values).

1.2.5.1 Developing Management Objectives

The CFSA requires management objectives in a FMP to be compatible with the sustainability
of the Crown forest (section 68 (3)(c)); and indicators of objective achievement to be
identified (section 68 (3)(d)). Also, the CFSA (section 68 (5)(b)) requires each FMP to contain
management objectives relating to:

(a) Crown forest diversity objectives, including consideration for the conservation
    of natural landscape patterns, forest structure and composition, habitat for
    animal life and the abundance and distribution of forest ecosystems;
(b) social and economic objectives, including harvest levels and a recognition that
    healthy forest ecosystems are vital to the well-being of Ontario communities;
(c) objectives relating to the provision of forest cover for those values that are
    dependent on the Crown forest; and
(d) silviculture objectives for the harvest, renewal and maintenance of the Crown
    forest.

If applicable, management objectives will be developed for forest-related species at risk on
the management unit. Management objectives will consider the ESA and any relevant ESA
policy direction.
Figure A-3 identifies objective categories from the CFSA, indicators and timing of
assessment.
## Figure A-3: Indicators of Objective Achievement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CFSA Objective Category</th>
<th>Indicator(s)</th>
<th>Timing of Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Social and Economic</td>
<td>Long-term projected available harvest area</td>
<td>• During development of proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3, FMP-8, FMP-9, FMP-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long-term projected available harvest volume by species group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long-term projected available harvest volume by broad size or product group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social and Economic</td>
<td>Opportunities for involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in plan development</td>
<td>• Draft Plan (FMP-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LCC’s self-evaluation of its effectiveness in plan development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFSA Objective Category</td>
<td>Indicator(s)</td>
<td>Timing of Assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Diversity</td>
<td>Landscape pattern</td>
<td>• During development of proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3, FMP-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Natural Landscape Patterns</td>
<td>Area by forest unit and development stage</td>
<td>• Upon completion of operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.10, FMP-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Forest Structure and Composition</td>
<td>Amount and distribution of old growth forest</td>
<td>• Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Distribution and abundance of forest ecosystems</td>
<td>(refer to forest management guides for indicators)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Diversity and Provision of forest cover</td>
<td>Habitat for forest-related species</td>
<td>• During development of proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3, FMP-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Habitat for animal life</td>
<td>Habitat for forest-related species at risk (refer to forest management guides and ESA policy for indicators)</td>
<td>• Upon completion of operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.10, FMP-10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFSA Objective Category</td>
<td>Indicator(s)</td>
<td>Timing of Assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social and Economic Planned harvest levels Community well-being</td>
<td>Actual harvest area, by forest unit. (% of planned harvest area)</td>
<td>Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actual harvest volume, by species group. (% of planned harvest volume)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social and Economic Community well-being</td>
<td>Kilometres of SFL roads per square kilometre of Crown forest.</td>
<td>Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFSA Objective Category</td>
<td>Indicator(s)</td>
<td>Timing of Assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silviculture</td>
<td>Percent of harvested forest area assessed as successfully established by forest unit</td>
<td>Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Planned and actual percent of harvest area treated by silvicultural strata</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Planned and actual percent of area successfully regenerated to the target forest unit by forest unit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecological Sustainability</td>
<td>Percent of forest operation inspections in non-compliance, by activity and remedy type</td>
<td>Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compliance with management practices that prevent, minimize or mitigate site damage (% of inspections in non-compliance, by remedy type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compliance with management practices that protect water quality and fish habitat (% of inspections in non-compliance, by remedy type)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social and Economic</td>
<td>Managed Crown forest available for timber production</td>
<td>Year 5 management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Harvest levels, community well-being</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The LTMD and the determination of sustainability require the development of management objectives and associated indicators, desirable levels and targets. Summary information associated with the development of management objectives will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix I).

A management objective is a statement of a quantitative or qualitative desired future forest benefit or condition developed specifically for the management unit to be achieved through forest management planning and/or the manipulation of forest cover. A management objective may have an implementation time frame greater than the 10-year period of the FMP.

Each management objective will have an indicator(s). An indicator is a systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are used to assess the effectiveness of forest management planning and/or activities in achieving management objectives, and the sustainability of the forest.

The indicators will be assessed at various times during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. Figure A-3 identifies which indicators that will be assessed during plan preparation; during plan implementation; or the indicators may be assessed during preparation and during implementation.

A desirable level will be established for each indicator. A desirable level is a measurable amount (i.e., specific number, range or trend) for an indicator to be achieved and maintained over time. Desirable levels that are not provided directly by guides or other sources of direction will be established locally by the planning team with input from the LCC. Achievement of desirable levels may require a longer time frame than the modelling horizon.

Management Zones

Management zones are geographical areas within a management unit that provide spatial context when preparing the LTMD or planning proposed operations. The two types of management zones are strategic management zones and operational management zones.

A strategic management zone may influence strategic analysis, and operational planning. Strategic management zones may represent either strategic objectives (e.g., caribou habitat objectives, achieve landscape pattern objectives) or areas with distinct ecological characteristics. Strategic zones are also used to assess the spatial distribution of harvest over the first four FMP periods (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).
The degree to which strategic management zones are represented in the model depends on the strategic models used as the decision support system (i.e., spatial versus non-spatial). While some zones may be represented in the base model (e.g., ecological basis for different yield curves), zones usually reflect objectives (e.g., Dynamic Caribou Habitat Schedule for caribou habitat objectives), and are defined during objective development and determination of the LTMD.

Strategic management zones will be identified considering the following criteria:

(a) balance of harvest in proximity to forest resource processing facilities or demand centres;
(b) accessibility of harvest (e.g., topography, land ownership, existing road infrastructure, land use decisions, species at risk);
(c) the achievement of landscape pattern objectives;
(d) consistency with strategic access strategy; and
(e) additional strategic criteria applicable to the management unit (e.g., moose emphasis areas, enhanced silviculture areas, large deer yards).

Strategic management zones will be included in the final planning inventory and represented in the model used to determine the LTMD.

Operational management zones represent areas with distinct operational constraints (e.g., accessibility, wildlife, fisheries or other constraints on forest operations). Operational management zones may be used on management units with significant variation in forest level operational characteristics. If applicable, operational management zones will be included in the final planning inventory.

Desired Forest and Benefits Meeting

The MNRF district manager will host a desired forest and benefits meeting between the planning team, plan advisors, LCC, and First Nation and Métis communities. Part A, Section 3.5.1.1 describes the requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement in the desired forest and benefits meeting. The MNRF district manager may also invite interested members of the public. The purpose of the meeting is to inform participants of the background information and to provide a forum for participants to share their respective interests in the management of the forest. The meeting will provide input for the development of objectives, indicators and desirable levels by:

(a) identifying local desired forest and benefits;
(b) reviewing management objectives, indicators, desirable levels, and targets in the current FMP;
(c) reviewing indicators and target achievement from the year five management unit annual report for the current FMP; and
(d) reviewing management objectives and indicators from the FMPM and forest management guides.

A summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting will be prepared.

**Setting Desired Levels**

Management objectives will be developed to address required indicators from Figure A-3. Management objectives may also be developed to address desired forest and benefits identified by the planning team and LCC with input from the public and First Nation and Métis communities (e.g., selected wildlife species). The planning team will review and confirm, update, or revise management objectives from the current FMP. The development of management objectives will also consider the background information (Part A, Section 1.1.8), in particular, forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.3), and recommendations from the year five management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0).

Desirable levels that are not provided directly by guides or other sources of direction are refined through scoping analysis. Scoping analysis is an iterative process that involves a series of investigations to provide insight to what the forest is capable of producing to develop realistic and feasible desirable levels for objective indicators. Scoping investigations will consider implications on wood supply, forest conditions, habitat, and other non-timber resources for the short term, medium term, and long term.

The following investigations will be considered in the development of desirable levels:

(a) An investigation into the ability of the forest to meet forest diversity and forest cover desirable levels (based on current forest condition and forest dynamics); and

(b) An investigation and assessment of the ability of the forest to continue to supply forest benefit levels associated with the current FMP.

The management objectives, indicators and the timing of assessment for each indicator will be documented in FMP-10.

**Harvest Eligibility Criteria**

Criteria will be developed to identify areas that could reasonably be harvested (i.e., eligible harvest areas). The criteria will be consistent with the direction and standards in MNRF’s applicable forest management guide(s) (e.g., the guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale) and incorporated in strategic modelling.
Considerations for the development of the criteria include:

(a) the maturity of forest stands (age classes);
(b) operability of an area (e.g., physical, topographical, and economic constraints);
(c) species at risk requirements;
(d) strategic and operational management zones;
(e) wildlife habitat requirements;
(f) industrial wood requirements;
(g) previous commitments to harvest areas;
(h) provision for continuity of operations; and
(i) the need for insect pest management and salvage operations.

CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES
This progress checkpoint will confirm support for information and products associated with the development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1).

1.2.5.2 Development of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction
The base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4) will be used as the starting point for the development of the proposed LTMD.

The decision support system will be used to conduct strategic analysis. Strategic analysis is an iterative process used to determine the locations, types and levels of access, harvest, renewal, and tending activities required to balance the achievement of management objectives associated with the management of forest cover, and to develop achievable targets in the proposed LTMD.

A target will be established for each indicator. A target is a measurable amount (i.e., specific number, range, or trend) for an indicator to be achieved within a specific timeframe. The target will be consistent with the desirable level of the indicator, or the target will be established to encourage movement towards the desirable level. If the target is moving away from the desirable level in the short term, it must be demonstrated that there is movement towards the desirable level in the medium or long term. At a minimum, a target will be established for each indicator assessed during plan implementation for the first 10-year period of the FMP.

The establishment of targets for each indicator will consider:

(a) the current forest condition;
(b) a balance of social, economic and environmental considerations;
(c) the associated indicator and the desirable level;
(d) the potential achievement for the short term (10 years), medium term and long term; and
(e) projections from past FMPs and historical levels of objective achievement.

In addition, for harvest level indicators, the targets will also consider:

(a) historic wood utilization;
(b) current industrial wood requirements;
(c) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified in the Provincial Wood Supply Strategy; and
(d) maximum even-flow harvest volume by major species group.

The concepts of medium term and long term are indicator specific. The actual timeframes for medium term and long term are indicator specific and will be identified in FMP-10.

Strategic modelling projects how the forest develops over time, in terms of its structure and composition in response to different types, levels, and spatial distribution of forest management activities. Strategic modelling will include 160-year projections. Strategic modelling will be used to demonstrate that the effects of projected forest management activities in the proposed LTMD for the period of the FMP provide acceptable projections of forest management activities in the future.

The development of the proposed LTMD will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix I).

Objective Assessment

The achievement of applicable management objectives will be assessed using the results of decision support systems. Objectives will be assessed individually, in relation to indicators, desirable levels, and targets (FMP-10), and in consideration of other objectives to balance the achievement of management objectives. The management objective information and an assessment of objective achievement will be documented in FMP-10. The achievement of management objectives that do not require decision support systems will also be documented in FMP-10.

Assessment of objectives directly affected by spatial aspects of forest operations are described in Part A, Sections 1.2.5.2 and 1.3.8. Following spatial assessments, it may be necessary to re-examine the preferred harvest areas and/or targets to balance the achievement of management objectives. Any adjustments to targets will consider the desirable levels for the indicators and will have rationale provided.
The assessment of objective achievement will consider:

(a) if the desirable level is achieved and/or maintained during the plan period or in the future.
(b) if the desirable level is not achieved and/or maintained during the plan period. If so, the following questions need to be answered:
   (i) Is the difference between the desirable level and the target substantial?
   (ii) Will progress be made towards achievement of the desirable level?
   (iii) What is the rationale for the difference?
(c) if there are trends in objective achievement which raise concerns.

Assessment of objectives directly associated with forest-related species at risk must consider the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.

Available Harvest Area

The harvest area by forest unit from the strategic analysis for the first 10-year period is the available harvest area for the FMP. Areas selected for harvest for the 10-year period will not exceed the available harvest area by forest unit.

Adjustments to the available harvest area during operational planning will be supported by analysis demonstrating the achievement of management objectives (spatial and non-spatial) beyond the 10-year plan period.

Management zones will be used to address the spatial distribution of harvest areas through time.

Documentation of modelling outputs will include:

(a) projected forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-6);
(b) projected habitat for selected wildlife species, if identified by the planning team (FMP-7);
(c) projected available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-8); and
(d) projected available harvest volume by species group, and broad size or product group (FMP-9).

Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas

The available harvest area serves as the upper limit for the selection of the preferred areas for harvest for the 10-year period. The preferred areas for harvest for the 10-year period will be selected from the eligible harvest area. In the identification of the preferred areas, the retained areas (i.e., reserves and areas retained from harvest to meet objectives or guide
requirements) accounted for in the strategic analysis will be considered. The preferred harvest areas will match, as closely as practical, the projections of forest harvest in the strategic model, in terms of strategic management zones, age class and/or stage of management. Visual aesthetics, opportunities for harvesting fuelwood, and operational management zones will be considered when identifying preferred areas for harvest.

The preferred areas for harvest for the 10-year period will be identified and portrayed. All eligible areas that are not identified as preferred areas for harvest are considered to be optional harvest areas for the 10-year period. The optional harvest areas will be identified and portrayed, and may be ranked in order of preference.

The landscape pattern will be assessed to determine whether the identified preferred harvest areas provide for the achievement of landscape pattern objectives. Changes to the preferred harvest areas may be required as a result of these assessments. The preferred harvest areas will be incorporated into the decision support system to re-assess the achievement of management objectives affected by the locations of harvest areas.

The assessment of management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of harvest areas will be documented in FMP-10.

If there are significant changes to the areas of operations during operational planning, the assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated after the planning of operations has been completed (Part A, Section 1.3.8).

Spatial Assessment

Management objectives and indicators affected by the location of the preferred areas for harvest for the 10-year period will be assessed for achievement of spatial objectives following identification of the preferred harvest areas.

The projected distribution of harvest over the first four FMP periods (i.e. 40 years) will be assessed for:

(a) feasibility of the spatial distribution of the harvest (e.g., operational, accessibility, other land use decisions); and
(b) economic feasibility of the harvest (e.g., balancing wood cost).

The projected distribution of harvest for the first four FMP periods will be portrayed.
Social and Economic Assessment

A social and economic assessment will be prepared for the proposed LTMD. The assessment will be prepared using a social and economic model, or a qualitative analysis based on the data in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11, Appendix II). The assessment will identify the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the LTMD. The assessment will examine how the quantity of harvest volume supplied to the wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the communities, forest resource processing facilities, and the other industrial and non-industrial users of the forest identified in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11).

Risk Assessment

A risk assessment will be prepared for the proposed LTMD. The assessment will identify risks associated with the implementation of the LTMD. When identifying risks, the planning team will consider access limitations, recommendations identified in independent forest audits, and the year five management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.5).

The risk assessment will include an investigation of recent wood utilization (e.g., last 10 years) and other identified risks, and an evaluation of the potential implications on the achievement of management objectives.

1.2.5.3 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives (using the assessment of objective achievement), the spatial assessments, the social and economic assessment, and the risk assessment, and whether the proposed LTMD provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit. The preliminary determination of sustainability will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider:

(a) the collective achievement of objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
(b) the preliminary spatial assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
(c) the social and economic assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2); and
(d) the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).
The preliminary determination of sustainability will be documented in the summary of the proposed LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.7). The documentation of the preliminary determination of sustainability will:

(a) describe how the LTMD provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit;
    (i) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and
    provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved;
    (ii) discuss the preliminary spatial assessment;
    (iii) discuss the social and economic assessment; and
    (iv) discuss the risks to implementing the proposed LTMD; and
(b) provide a conclusion that the LTMD provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

The planning team will present the proposed LTMD and the preliminary determination of sustainability to the LCC. The MNRF district manager will follow the requirements for First Nation and Métis communities in Part A, Section 3.5.1.1.

1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors

Primary roads provide principal access for the management unit, and are constructed, maintained and used as the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads, although there may be significant periods of time when specific primary roads are not required for forest management purposes. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to corridors for new primary roads which are required for forest management purposes for a 20-year horizon, including extensions to existing primary roads. The planning requirements involve the consideration and environmental analysis of a reasonable range of practical alternative one kilometre wide corridors.

Primary road corridors will be consistent with projected harvest distribution for the next four planning periods. Primary road corridors in the previous FMP, within which a road has not yet been constructed, will be reviewed. If the corridor is confirmed, no further corridor planning will be required. If changes to the use management strategy for the road are required, the planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7 and Appendix III will apply.

If changes to a corridor, or extensions to a confirmed corridor are required, the planning requirements in this section will apply.
In identifying a reasonable range of alternative corridors for analysis, there will be
consideration of:

(a) the projected harvest distribution for the next four FMP periods (i.e., 40
years);
(b) the degree to which physical conditions, identified values, and significant
engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide
opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;
(c) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario’s
Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, management statement of conservation
interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource
stewardship agreements); and
(d) the results of consultation with known interested and affected persons,
organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities.

The environmental analysis of the alternative corridors will consist of:

(a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of:
   (i) providing access to areas eligible for harvest, renewal and tending
       operations;
   (ii) potential effects on identified values; and
   (iii) providing access to any remote First Nation and Métis communities
        which were previously inaccessible by road;
(b) consideration of reasonable use management strategies (Part A, Section
    1.3.6.7) which include public access provisions or restrictions, maintenance
    provisions, and, where appropriate, decommissioning provisions and transfer
    provisions; and
(c) a consideration of relative costs related to road construction and use
    management, including maintenance, transfer and decommissioning costs.

Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new
primary road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix III.

If a new primary road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial
park or conservation reserve, the Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act,
(2006)(PPCRA) and applicable MNRF policy will apply. The requirements of the Class
Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves will also apply.

The confirmed corridors from the previous FMP and the alternative corridors for each new
primary road, for the next 20 years will be identified and portrayed.
1.2.7 Summary of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

To facilitate the public review, a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest will be produced. The summary will include:

(a) text to describe:
(i) the assessment of objective achievement with rationale for indicators that are not moving towards the desirable level; and
(ii) the preliminary determination of sustainability;
(iii) the risks to implementing the proposed LTMD; and
(iv) the rationale for the preferred areas for harvest, including a discussion how the applicable MNRF guide(s) were considered.

(b) FMP tables for:
(i) objectives and assessment of objective achievement (FMP -10);
(ii) available harvest area and volume (FMP-8 and FMP -9); and

(c) a summary map that portrays:
(i) preferred and optional harvest areas for the 10-year period;
(ii) confirmed primary road corridors;
(iii) new alternative primary road corridors; and
(iv) if applicable, modified fire response areas.

The summary of the proposed LTMD will be written in a clear and concise manner to facilitate the public review of the proposed LTMD.

CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR THE PROPOSED LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION,
DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY AND PRIMARY ROAD CORRIDORS

This progress checkpoint will confirm support by the MNRF for the information and products associated with the LTMD, the preliminary determination of sustainability and the primary road corridors developed in Part A, Section 1.2. to 1.2.7.

1.2.8 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

After the requirements in sections 1.2 to 1.2.7 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.2, and the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.
1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations

1.3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the FMP, in preparation for stage three of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.3). The information and products which are required to be available at the stage three information centre for the review of proposed operations are described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.3.

Planning efforts from current FMPs will be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in the development of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern, SGRs and road use management strategies.

The selection and confirmation of areas of operations is an iterative process. There will be adjustments to the areas of operations until submission of the final plan for MNRF approval. Areas of operations will be adjusted as a result of the planning of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern, the availability of new or better information and in response to public comments.

Additional requirements regarding the planning of operations for a FMP for Far North management units that are added to the AOU are described in Part F of this FMPM.

1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

Upon completion of the public review of the proposed LTMD for the forest (Part A, Section 2.3.3.2), prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2, MNRF will review any comments received as a result of the public review. A list of required modifications, and the rationale for those modifications, will be prepared, signed, and certified by an MNRF registered professional forester. Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, the list of required modifications, and the accompanying rationale, will be provided to the plan author within 15 days of completion of the public review of the proposed LTMD.

The plan author will address MNRF’s list of required modifications, which may result in further analysis and modeling being required. The MNRF regional director will provide preliminary endorsement of the LTMD after the required modifications have been satisfactorily addressed.

The MNRF regional director’s preliminary endorsement is intended to enable planning of operations to proceed with some certainty, and to minimize alterations to the LTMD in the draft FMP. However, circumstances may arise which require re-examination of the LTMD (e.g., major changes in information and assumptions used in modeling).
A summary of the LTMD, for which the MNRF regional director has provided preliminary endorsement, will be prepared. The summary will be an updated version of the summary of the proposed LTMD that was previously prepared (Part A, Section 1.2.7).

CHECKPOINT: PRELIMINARY ENDORSEMENT OF LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION

1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations

Harvest, renewal and tending areas will be identified.

1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas

Based on public comments on the preferred and optional harvest areas at stage two, the preferred harvest areas will be selected for the 10-year period. Areas selected as preferred for the 10-year period will become the planned harvest areas. Areas not selected as preferred harvest areas are optional harvest areas. The planned harvest areas and the optional harvest areas will be portrayed on map(s).

The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will not exceed the available harvest area for each forest unit. The planned harvest areas will match, as closely as practical, the projections of forest operations in the LTMD, in terms of management zone and age class and/or stage of management. In the selection of areas for harvest, the direction and standards in MNRF’s approved forest management guide(s) will be considered. The rationale for the planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will be documented.

The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will have unique harvest block identifiers and will be portrayed on maps.

If salvage operations are planned during preparation of the FMP, salvage harvest areas will be identified and mapped. Salvage area is additional to the planned harvest area and does not count against the available harvest area.

The planned harvest area for the 10-year period will be summarized in FMP-12.

The volume associated with the available harvest area and planned harvest area will be summarized in FMP-13.

The planned harvest volumes in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements for the management unit will be identified as unutilized. The area and volume associated with the planned harvest area and the projected utilization of the planned harvest volume will be summarized in FMP-14.
The projected wood utilization by mill will be summarized in FMP-15.

1.3.3.2 Contingency Area

During the 10-year period of the FMP, circumstances (e.g., wildfire, blowdown) may cause some of the planned harvest area to be unavailable for harvest. To accommodate such circumstances, contingency area for harvest operations will be identified and planned. The contingency area will serve to replace area for harvest during the 10-year period of the FMP, and will only be used if required.

Sufficient contingency area will be selected from the optional harvest areas, to support a minimum of one year, and a maximum of two years, of harvest operations. The contingency areas will have unique harvest block identifiers. The contingency areas and associated unique identifiers will be portrayed on maps.

The area and volume of the contingency area will be summarized in FMP-16.

An amendment to the FMP will be required to permit forest operations to proceed in the contingency area (Part C, Section 2.0).

1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas

Areas for renewal and tending operations will be identified and portrayed on maps for the 10-year period. Those areas will include: all of the areas selected for harvest; areas previously harvested during the current or previous FMP(s) and not yet renewed; areas of natural disturbances which require renewal; and areas which require tending.

The analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3), will be used in the planning of renewal and tending operations. The types and levels of renewal and tending operations planned for the 10-year period will be summarized in FMP-17. The levels of renewal and tending operations will be consistent with the projected levels of the proposed LTMD and the results of the analysis of silvicultural activities.

1.3.3.4 Silvicultural Trial Areas

Silvicultural trial areas are optional and can potentially occur on harvest, renewal or tending areas. The MNRF’s silvicultural guide(s) describes the requirements for the preparation, review and approval of silvicultural trial areas. The FMP will include the following information for silvicultural trial areas:

(a) treatment and forest type eligibility;
(b) limitations (e.g., size and number); and
(c) any applicable renewal standards.

Silvicultural trial areas will be planned and implemented using the approved silvicultural
guide(s). Silvicultural trial areas will be implemented in accordance with an approved SGR
(Part A, Section 1.3.5.2).

The planning team will consider what forest types are eligible for trial area implementation.
When determining if any forest types are eligible for trial area implementation, the effect of
a failed trial area on achievement of FMP targets will be considered.

1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

There may be situations where harvest operations from the current approved FMP are not
completed before expiry of the plan. Provisions for bridging operations and second-pass
harvest operations allow for harvest of these areas in the new FMP.

1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations

Areas of bridging operations will be identified to allow for the completion of harvest
operations from the current approved FMP. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be
identified from areas scheduled to be accessed and harvested in the last AWS of the current
approved plan. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be portrayed on the operations
maps, and will be updated during the preparation of the FMP.

Bridging operations will be eligible for scheduling in the first year of the FMP. Bridging
operations will be limited to three months harvest area from the current FMP and harvest of
bridging area must be completed by March 31, of the first year of the FMP. The bridging
harvest areas contribute to the achievement of the available harvest area in the current FMP
but not the new FMP.

1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may have been planned in
two passes, but only the first pass may have been completed before the expiry of the
current approved FMP. Areas planned for second-pass harvest, where only the first pass has
occurred by the expiry of the current FMP, will be identified to allow for completion of
harvest operations. Areas planned for second-pass harvest operations will be identified and
mapped, and will be updated during the preparation of the FMP. The second-pass harvest
areas do not contribute to the achievement of harvesting the available harvest area of the
new FMP.
An estimate of the volume associated with second-pass harvest areas will be prepared.

1.3.5 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Operations, and Conditions on Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits

For the areas of operations for the 10-year period, including contingency areas, prescriptions will be developed. Operational prescriptions for areas of concern will be developed for all harvest, renewal and tending, and protection areas. Areas of concern conditions will be developed for all roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits for the 10-year period. These are referred to as conditions for areas of concern. Part A, Section 1.3.5.2 provides direction for conditions on regular operations.

1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern

An area of concern is a defined geographic area associated with an identified value that may be affected by forest management activities. These identified values are portrayed on the values map(s) for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and include provincial parks, conservation reserves and all lakes and streams. An operational prescription for harvest, renewal, tending, and protection activities or a condition on a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit is developed for an area of concern to prevent, minimize or mitigate adverse effects of forest management operations on the value.

Operational prescriptions for areas of concern may be reserves (i.e., prohibition of operations), modified operations (i.e., specific conditions or restrictions on operations) or regular operations (i.e., in accordance with the SGRs), individually or in combination. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or unique prescriptions that are developed to protect or manage specific values.

Operational conditions for areas of concern may be reserves (i.e., prohibition of operations) or modified operations (i.e., specific conditions or restrictions on operations) individually or in combination. Modified operations may be normal operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or unique conditions that are developed to protect or manage specific values.

The proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be documented in FMP-11. All areas of concern will be clearly identified on the operations maps, and where practical, the proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will also be portrayed on the maps. All operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern documented in FMP-11 will be cross-referenced to the operations maps, and if applicable, the supplementary documentation forms (Appendix IV).
For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern from the current approved FMP may be used and documented in FMP-11. The operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be identified on the maps, and where practical, the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will also be portrayed on the maps.

Planning efforts from current FMPs should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in the development of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern. Operational prescriptions and conditions will be developed for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern with a common value(s), using the forest management guides identified by MNRF as applicable to the management unit. An operational prescription or condition for an area of concern may also be proposed from another planning exercise for inclusion in the FMP. In some situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition for an area of concern.

Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from a Forest Management Guide

If a forest management guide provides specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) as to the appropriate prescription or condition to be used for a particular value, that specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) will be the operational prescription or condition. Documentation of the operational prescription or condition, and the applicable section of the forest management guide, will be provided in FMP-11 and no supplementary documentation is required.

If a change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a forest management guide is desired, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition, in accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions developed by the planning team. In such situations, the operational prescription or condition will be recorded in FMP-11 as an exception. The rationale for that exception will be provided in the supplementary documentation, and the monitoring program for the FMP will describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that exception (Part B, Section 4.7.2).

Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Species at Risk

If specific direction for the species at risk and its habitat is provided in an approved forest management guide, that direction must be used in the development of the operational prescription or condition(s) and may only be modified in accordance with the requirements of the ESA (e.g., by an authorization issued or a regulation made under that Act). Documentation of the operational prescription and condition(s), and the source of direction will be provided in FMP-11 and no supplementary documentation is required.
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition(s), in accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions developed by the planning team. The operational prescription or condition(s) for a species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of MNRF staff with expertise in species at risk and the ESA, must satisfy the requirements of the ESA and be consistent with supporting policies. Documentation of the operational prescription and condition(s) will be provided in FMP-11 and in the supplementary documentation as required.

Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA, reasonable alternatives, including alternatives that would not adversely affect the species, will be considered and documented.

Operational Prescriptions and Conditions from Other Planning Exercises

An operational prescription or condition that directly relates to forest management activities may have been previously developed for an area of concern through another planning exercise (e.g., development of a resource stewardship agreement).

The proposed operational prescription or condition will be made available for public review. If the public review supports the proposed operational prescription or condition, no further planning will be required. The proposed operational prescription or condition, and its source, will be documented in FMP-11. The consideration of the comments received from interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities at stage three, and the rationale for the operational prescription or condition, will be documented in the form prescribed in Appendix IV.

If the public review at stage three does not support the proposed operational prescription or condition, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition, in accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions developed by the planning team.

Operational Prescriptions and Conditions Developed by the Planning Team

For some value(s), an approved forest management guide may not provide specific direction or recommendations, no forest management guide may exist, or a proposed operational prescription or condition may not have been developed in another planning exercise. In addition, as described in the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions from a forest management guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a forest management guide (i.e., an exception) may be desired. In these situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition.
In the development of the operational prescription or condition, there will be consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, and participation of interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities. For an operational prescription or condition developed for an area of concern that involves a cultural heritage resource value, tourism or recreational value, there will be consideration of visual aesthetics, which may include the use of viewscape analysis techniques, in the development of the operational prescription or condition.

The environmental analysis of each alternative operational prescription or condition will include:

(a) the identification of the potential environmental effects of specific forest management operations on the value(s) in the area of concern; and

(b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the alternative operational prescription or condition in preventing, minimizing or mitigating those potential effects.

The selection of the proposed operational prescription or condition will be based on a comparison of the environmental analyses of the alternative operational prescriptions or conditions.

The proposed operational prescription or condition will be documented in FMP-11. Documentation of the consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, the participation of interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities, and the rationale for the proposed operational prescription or condition will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP, in the form prescribed in Appendix IV.

1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

For harvest, renewal, and tending areas, SGRs will be developed (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4), conditions on regular operations will be identified, and any requirements for planned clearcuts will apply.

Silvicultural Ground Rules

The SGRs will serve as the prescriptions for regular operations within areas of operations for the 10-year period of the FMP, and naturally disturbed areas that are harvested. The SGRs will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the direction of the plan author, using the silvicultural guide(s) identified by MNRF as applicable to the management unit. The SGRs will be documented in FMP-4.
For the planned areas of operations for the 10-year period, the applicable SGRs will be identified, portrayed, and cross-referenced to FMP-4. For candidate areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the applicable SGRs from the current approved FMP will be identified.

The information on the operations maps represents the best estimate of the site conditions that are likely to be encountered, based on the available information at the time of the planning of operations. At the time of implementation of operations, in the event that the actual site conditions encountered are found to be different than those previously identified in the FMP, other relevant approved alternative silvicultural treatments in the SGRs can be selected.

The situations where prescribed burns and aerial applications of herbicide may occur will be described in the FMP.

The planning team will identify the planned levels of renewal and tending activities (FMP-17) and associated expenditures (FMP-19) required to achieve objectives described in the FMP.

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two passes. The planning team will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will achieve the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD.

### Conditions on Regular Operations

Conditions applied in areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, conducted in accordance with the SGRs, to maintain or protect important ecological features that are not addressed by operational prescriptions or conditions for areas of concern (e.g., grouse nests, wildlife trees) or to implement specific operational standards and guidelines (e.g., rutting) will be identified. Conditions on regular operations may be identified for the entire management unit or for specific strategic or operational management zones.

Planning efforts from current FMPs should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in the development of conditions on regular operations. Conditions on regular operations will be developed for important ecological features using the forest management guides identified by MNRF as applicable to the management unit.

Conditions on regular operations, described in MNRF’s applicable guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP. If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the planning team will develop conditions on regular operations. In addition, as described in the requirements for conditions on regular operations from a forest management guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a
forest management guide may be desired. In these situations, the planning team will
develop conditions on regular operations and the rationale for the change from the specific
direction or recommendation will be documented in the FMP.

**Conditions on Regular Operations for Species at Risk**

If specific direction for the species at risk and its habitat is provided in an approved forest
management guide, that direction must be used in the development of the conditions on
regular operations and may only be modified in accordance with the requirements of the
ESA (e.g., by an authorization issued or a regulation made under that Act).

If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the
planning team will develop conditions on regular operations. The conditions on regular
operations for a species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of MNRF staff with
expertise in species at risk and the ESA, must satisfy the requirements of the ESA and be
consistent with supporting policies.

Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under
the ESA, reasonable alternatives, including alternatives that would not adversely affect the
species, will be considered and will be documented.

**Residual Forest for Planned Clearcuts**

As described in Part A, Section 1.2.5.2, areas for harvest operations using the clearcut
silviculture system will be selected using the direction and standards in MNRF’s applicable
forest management guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and
site scales).

For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silviculture system, the required area of
stand-level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in MNRF’s
applicable forest management guide(s). The area of stand-level residual will be identified
and mapped in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide(s).
1.3.6 Roads

The planning requirements for new primary, branch, and operational roads that are required to access harvest areas, including contingency areas, that are planned to be constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP, are described in this section. Planning requirements for new primary and branch road crossings of areas of concern within the corridors, and new operational roads within operational road boundaries, for the ten-year period, including any contingency areas are also described. Planning requirements for existing roads are also described. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

The water crossing standards to be implemented, as described in the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings, will be documented in the FMP. The planning of water crossings will be conducted in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.5.1.

For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1), the road corridor planning and planning of operational roads from the current approved FMP will apply. Each proposed new primary, branch and operational road and associated use management strategy will be identified in FMP-18 and portrayed.

The planning of roads must be informed in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.

1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors

Based on the environmental analysis of alternative corridors and public comments at stage two, the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary road required for the 20-year horizon and the associated use management strategy will be finalized. The rationale for the proposed corridor and the associated use management strategy will be documented. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will be provided. The format for the documentation is prescribed in Appendix III.

Based on the public comments at stage two, any changes to the use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7) for a confirmed primary road corridor from a previous FMP will be documented in FMP-18. Documentation of the rationale for the revised use management strategy for the road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix III.

Each planned new primary road will be identified, and the use management strategy for the road will be recorded, in FMP-18. The planned corridor for each primary road will be portrayed. The portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP will be identified.
1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors

Branch roads are roads, other than primary roads, that branch off existing or new primary or
other branch roads, providing access to and through areas of operations on a management
unit. Whenever a new road, other than a primary or operational road, is required to provide
access to, through, or between, separate areas of operations, the road will be classified as a
branch road.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to any corridors for new branch roads
which are required for forest management purposes for the 10-year period of the FMP,
including extensions to existing branch roads.

For each new branch road, a one kilometre wide corridor will be identified, based on
consideration of:

(a) the degree to which the physical conditions, identified values and significant
    engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide
    opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;

(b) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario’s
    Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, statements of conservation interest, park
    management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship
    agreements); and

(c) the results of consultation with known affected persons, organizations, and
    First Nation and Métis communities.

The consideration of items (a) to (c) will provide the rationale for the proposed corridor for
each new branch road. Each proposed new branch road will be identified in FMP-18. For
each new branch road, a use management strategy will also be developed, in accordance
with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7. Documentation of the rationale
for the proposed corridor, and associated use management strategy for the road, will be
produced in the format prescribed in Appendix III. The road use management strategy will
be recorded in FMP-18.

A common rationale may apply to the proposed corridors for a number of new branch roads.
If so, the rationale can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary
documentation form (Appendix III) for each new branch road to which it applies. A common
use management strategy may also apply to a number of new branch roads. If so, the use
management strategy can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary
documentation form (Appendix III) for each new branch road to which it applies.

The proposed corridor for each new branch road for the 10-year period will be portrayed.
1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads

The planning requirements in this section will apply to each crossing of an area of concern by a proposed corridor for a new primary or branch road. In the preparation of the FMP, these crossings will be planned for the portion of the road that will be constructed during the 10-year period.

For each crossing of an area of concern, there will be a determination and documentation of:

(a) locations within an area of concern where a road may be constructed; and
(b) conditions on the construction of the crossing (e.g., crossing structure, construction methods, mitigative measures).

The determination of locations within an area of concern where a road may be constructed, and construction conditions, will involve consideration and documentation of:

(a) identified values;
(b) applicable MNRF guide(s);
(c) the results of discussions with known affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities; and
(d) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

The conditions on construction within an area of concern will be finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D, Section 3.2.5), consistent with the conditions described in the FMP.

For each new primary and branch road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D, Section 3.2.5) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

For each new primary and branch road crossing of an area of concern in a proposed corridor the conditions on construction within an area of concern will be identified and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps. The conditions on new primary or branch road construction within an area of concern will be documented in FMP-11. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-11.

If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a primary or branch road, the receipt of comments will be noted in FMP-11 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix IV, Part D).

Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern, any conditions on the primary road, branch road, or landing as described in MNRF’s guide(s)
(e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be
documented in the FMP.

If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a
provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable MNRF policy will apply.
The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and
Conservation Reserves will also apply.

1.3.6.4 Operational Roads

Operational roads are roads within operational road boundaries, other than primary or
branch roads, that provide short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations.
Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest
management purposes, and are often decommissioned.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to:

(a) identification of operational road boundaries, within which new operational
roads may be constructed;
(b) conditions on new operational road crossings of areas of concern; and
(c) the development of a use management strategy for the new operational
roads or network of operational roads within each operational road
boundary.

The areas within which new operational roads are to be constructed for the 10-year period
will be identified by operational road boundaries. An operational road boundary includes the
harvest area, the area from an existing road or planned road corridor to the same harvest
area. Operational road boundaries will be identified and portrayed.

For new operational road crossings of areas of concern, conditions on the construction of
the crossings will be identified for individual areas of concern or groups of areas of concern.
The determination of the conditions will involve consideration and documentation of:

(a) identified values;
(b) applicable MNRF guide(s);
(c) the results of consultation with known affected persons, organizations, and
First Nation and Métis communities; and
(d) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

Conditions may include: no road construction permitted, specified water crossing structures
and methods of construction; timing restrictions on crossing construction; marking or
flagging of crossing locations prior to construction; and notification to directly affected
persons and First Nation and Métis communities in advance of crossing construction.
The conditions on construction of new operational road crossings of areas of concern or landings within an area of concern will be documented in FMP-11, and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of comments will be noted in FMP-11 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix IV, Part C).

The conditions on construction where a road may cross within an area of concern will be finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D, Section 3.2.5), consistent with the conditions described in the FMP.

For each new operational road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D, Section 3.2.5) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern, any conditions on the operational road or landing, as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

If a new operational road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable MNRF policy will apply. The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves will also apply.

Use management strategies will be developed for new operational roads or networks of operational roads within operational road boundaries (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7) and documented in the format prescribed in Appendix III. A common use management strategy may apply to multiple new operational roads or networks of operational roads. The use management strategy will be documented in FMP-18 for the new operational road or network of operational roads to which it applies.

1.3.6.5 Existing Roads

Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee as described in Part A¹, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF²,

¹ This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990,c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.
² Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of “road” under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal
will be documented in FMP-18. The associated use management strategy for each existing road or road network will also be documented in FMP-18. Each existing road or road network documented in FMP-18 will be portrayed.

If a use management strategy does not exist for an existing road or road network, or an existing use management strategy will be changed, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.7 will apply. Documentation of the proposed use management strategy for the road or road network will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix III. Each proposed or changed use management strategy will be documented in FMP-18.

If an existing road required for forest management purposes traverses a provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable MNRF policy will apply. The additional requirements of the PPCRA will not apply in the recreation/utilization zone of Algonquin Park. The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves will also apply.

**Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings**

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern, the appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing, as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in FMP-11, and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area of concern, any conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

The conditions on the use and maintenance of existing roads and landings must be informed in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.

**1.3.6.6 Forestry Aggregate Pits**

By regulations under the *Aggregate Resources Act*, a person engaged in forest operations on Crown land is exempt from subsection 34(1) of that Act, as amended from time to time (i.e., the requirement for an aggregate permit to operate a pit), if the following criteria are satisfied:

highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act*, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50
(a) a FMP for the management unit has been approved;
(b) the aggregate is required for a forest access road in a management unit;
(c) aggregate is extracted:
   (i) no closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table; or
   (ii) closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table if:
       • the proposed site is remote or isolated; and
       • the excavation limit of the site is not within:
         – 500 metres of a coldwater stream;
         – 1000 metres of a waterwell, whether dug or drilled; and
         – 5000 metres of a receptor (e.g., residences or facilities where people
           sleep {nursing homes, hospitals, trailer parks, camping grounds};
           schools; day-care centres).
(d) aggregate extraction will be completed within 10 years from the
    commencement of the pit; and
(e) the pit is established within:
   (i) an approved new primary or branch road corridor in the FMP and the
       AWS;
   (ii) an approved harvest area in the FMP and in the AWS;
   (iii) an approved operational road boundary in the FMP and in the AWS;
   (iv) an approved aggregate extraction area in the FMP and in the AWS
        located within 500 metres of an existing forest access road.

Aggregate pits that satisfy these criteria are hereafter referred to as “forestry aggregate pits”.

Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

Forestry aggregate pits must be operated in accordance with the operational standards set out in Appendix V.

Operational standards for forestry aggregate pits as set out in Appendix V will be documented in the FMP.

Aggregate Extraction Areas

Aggregate extraction areas identify known sites of aggregate where a forestry aggregate pit is planned to be established. Aggregate extraction areas will be within 500 metres of an existing forest access road that is outside:

(a) an approved harvest area;
(b) an operational road boundary;
(c) a primary road corridor; or
(d) a branch road corridor.

Aggregate extraction areas will be identified for the 10-year period.

Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits

The appropriate conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits, as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP. Conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits must be informed in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.

If a forestry aggregate pit intersects an area of concern, the appropriate conditions, as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in FMP-11, and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps.

If an existing forestry aggregate pit is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the forestry aggregate pit does not intersect an area of concern, any conditions on the forestry aggregate pit as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

1.3.6.7 Use Management Strategies

For each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee as described in Part A3, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF, a use management strategy is required. A use management strategy includes:

(a) maintenance provisions;
(b) monitoring provisions;
(c) access provisions or restrictions which apply to the public and commercial resource users, with the rationale for the restrictions;

---

3 This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990,c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.
4 Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of “road” under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the Municipal Act, 2001, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act,R.S.O 1990, c.P.50
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

(d) a statement if the intent of the sustainable forest licensee is to transfer the responsibility for the road or road network to MNRF in the next 20 years, and the operating year in which the transfer is intended to occur;
(e) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility beyond the period of the FMP, MNRF will provide a preliminary indication for the management intent for the road or road network;
(f) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility within the plan period, MNRF will provide the management intent for the road or road network; and
(g) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility within the plan period and MNRF’s management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, the activities required prior to transfer, including potential removal of water crossings will be documented (e.g., decommissioning, signs).

Road use management strategies must be informed in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.

For each new or existing road or road network, the use management strategy will be described in FMP-18. If a change is proposed to the future use management for an existing road, the road will be identified and portrayed.

If the responsibility of a road is to be transferred during the implementation of the FMP, an amendment to the FMP will be required (Part C, Section 2.0).

1.3.7 Expenditures

The projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, will be identified. The assumptions and ratios used to estimate expenditures associated with the implementation of renewal and tending operations will be described. The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in FMP-19.

1.3.8 Spatial Assessment

If there are significant changes to the areas of operations during operational planning, the assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated after the planning of operations has been completed (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).
1.3.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction

An assessment of the expected effect of proposed types, levels and spatial distribution of harvest, renewal and tending operations on the achievement of progress towards the LTMD will be prepared. The assessment will:

(a) compare the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations to the projections in the LTMD;
(b) compare the location of harvest areas to the projections in the LTMD;
(c) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the selected harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;
(d) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest volume of the selected harvest area, on the achievement of the LTMD; and
(e) examine the effect of the amount of projected unutilized harvest volume on the achievement of the LTMD.

The assessment will be supported by modeling similar to the forest modeling for the development of the LTMD. The proposed operations for the 10-year period will be incorporated into the analysis tools for this assessment.

If proposed types, levels, and spatial distribution of operations deviate from the projections in the LTMD, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be provided. If there are significant effects on objective achievement and/or sustainability, it may be necessary to adjust the areas of operations for the 10-year period, and complete the required planning and assessment of operations.

1.3.10 Determination of Sustainability

In the preparation of a FMP, the last step in the determination of sustainability involves updating the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), based on the results of the planning of operations, and concluding that the FMP provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit.

The assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) will be updated to reflect changes as a result of the planning of operations, using the updated spatial assessments if applicable (Part A, Section 1.3.8).

The determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives and the comparison of proposed operations to the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.3.9), and will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.
The determination of sustainability will consider:

(a) the collective achievement of objectives;
(b) the spatial assessment;
(c) the social and economic assessment; and
(d) the risk assessment.

If the determination of sustainability indicates that the desirable level of an indicator is not achieved within the plan period, rationale will be required. The rationale will examine whether there is movement towards the desirable levels, and the timeframe in which the desirable levels will be achieved.

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

(a) describe how the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit, and discuss:
   (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved;
   (ii) the preliminary spatial assessment;
   (iii) the social and economic assessment; and
   (iv) the risk assessment; and
(b) provide a conclusion that the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

1.3.11 Summary Map

A summary map(s) will be prepared and available at stage three. The summary map(s) will include:

(a) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the FMP;
(b) the optional areas for harvest operations;
(c) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads which are required for the next 20 years;
(d) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-year period of the plan; and
(e) past and approved harvest operations for the current FMP, and the previous 10 years.
1.3.12 Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

After the requirements in sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.11 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.3, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

1.4.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and MNRF review of the draft FMP, in preparation for stage four of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.4).

1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan

Following the public review of planned operations for the 10-year period, the planning team will compile comments that were received from the public. The MNRF will also compile comments that were received from each First Nation and Métis community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the First Nation and Métis community (Part A, Section 3.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 3.5. The planning team will review the comments, consider if changes to the planned operations are required and make the necessary changes. The monitoring and assessment programs will be developed (Part B, Section 4.7) for forest operations inspections, exceptions monitoring, assessment of regeneration (FMP-20), and monitoring of roads and water crossings, that will be conducted during the period of the FMP. If applicable, a monitoring and assessment program will be developed for a species where the FMP is designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument (Part B, Section 4.7.5). The fire prevention and preparedness measures will be prepared (Part B, Section 4.8) and included in the forest management plan. The draft FMP will be produced in accordance with the documentation requirements prescribed in Part B.

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the FMP - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A) of the draft FMP. The approval page will note the forest information portal submission identifier. Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA, Figure B-1B will be included in the draft FMP. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs. For those components of the draft FMP that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1C. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official
of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The
MNRF does not sign the title, certification and approval page for the draft FMP.

A List of Exceptions will be produced, in the format described in Part B, Figure B-2. The List of
Exceptions includes all silvicultural treatments in the SGRs which are exceptions to the
recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions and conditions
for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations
(standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guide(s). The List of
Exceptions will accompany the FMP - Title, Certification and Approval Page.

Prior to submission of the draft FMP to MNRF, the plan author will ensure that:

- the plan is complete and meets the content requirements of Part B of the
  FMPM;
- all calculations are correct;
- the plan is edited for ease of understanding; and
- the plan contains page numbers and line numbers.

1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan

The plan author will submit the draft FMP for MNRF review on or before the scheduled date
for draft plan submission.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft FMP to the LCC. At
the request of the LCC, an electronic copy of the draft FMP, or paper copies of specified
sections of the draft plan, will be provided to the LCC for review. After that review, the LCC
will prepare a brief statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with
the draft FMP. The statement will be provided to the MNRF district manager for inclusion in
the draft FMP that is available for public review.

1.4.4 MNRF Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

The MNRF regional resources manager will confirm that the draft FMP is complete before
the commencement of the MNRF review.

A period of 60 days is provided for MNRF review of the draft FMP and to provide the
preliminary list of required alterations to the sustainable forest licensee. In most situations,
MNRF reviewers will be familiar with the plan, having participated on, or provided advice to,
the planning team. Some sections of the plan will have had a preliminary review, or will have
received preliminary MNRF support at a progress checkpoint during the preparation of the
plan (Part A, Section 1.1.6). The MNRF will also have reviewed the LTMD, as part of the
MNRF regional director’s preliminary endorsement of the LTMD, prior to the planning of
operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.2).
The purpose of the MNRF review of the draft FMP is to confirm that the plan meets the requirements of the FMPM. The review will also confirm:

(a) relevant policies and obligations have been considered;
(b) forest management guides have been properly used and consistently applied;
(c) identified exceptions are acceptable;
(d) planning team decisions and the consideration of public comments are reflected in the draft FMP; and
(e) the plan is complete, calculations are correct, and that the plan is understandable by those who must refer to, implement, and monitor the implementation of the plan.

1.4.4.1 MNRF’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations

The product of the MNRF review is a preliminary list of required alterations, with the reasons for the required alterations. The list is a compilation of required alterations from MNRF reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the LCC.

The MNRF person designated as coordinator in the project plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2) will coordinate and prepare the preliminary list of required alterations. The required alterations from MNRF reviewers will be compiled and forwarded to the coordinator approximately 10 days before the completion of the 60-day MNRF review period. The coordinator will collate the regional and district required alterations, edit the list, and, if necessary, consult with the plan author and plan reviewers to clarify required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNRF registered professional forester.

In the preparation of the preliminary list of required alterations, the MNRF regional resources manager will resolve any disagreements among MNRF reviewers. Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will provide the preliminary list of required alterations to the plan author before the public review of the draft FMP. The plan author will submit the preliminary list of required alterations for inclusion with the draft FMP that is available for public review.

1.4.5 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary

A draft FMP summary will be prepared. The purpose of the summary is to facilitate public review of the draft FMP, by having a summary of the plan available for reviewers to keep for their own use. The content requirements of the FMP summary are prescribed in Part B, Section 7.0.

The summary will be submitted to the MNRF regional resources manager at least 30 days before the information centre to review the draft FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.4). A French
1.4.6 Availability of the Draft Forest Management Plan

As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, the draft FMP, the preliminary list of required alterations, and the draft FMP summary, will be available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website.

As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the draft FMP.

The English and French versions of the draft FMP summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

1.4.7 Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

After the requirements in Sections 1.4.1 to 1.4.6 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management Plan

1.5.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft FMP, and MNRF review and approval of the FMP, in preparation for stage five of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.5).

During the public review of the draft FMP, the plan author may discuss the preliminary list of required alterations with MNRF reviewers to determine how required alterations will be addressed in the revision of the FMP.

1.5.2 Final List of Required Alterations

Following the public review of the draft FMP and MNRF’s preliminary list of required alterations, the plan author and the MNRF will compile comments that were received from...
the public. The MNRF will also compile comments that were received from each First Nation
and Métis community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the First Nation
and Métis community (Part A, Section 3.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A,
Section 3.5.

Within 15 days of the completion of the public review of the draft FMP, the plan author and
planning team will review the comments from the public and First Nation and Métis
communities, and determine if any changes or additions are required to the preliminary list
of required alterations. If the plan author and planning team cannot decide on whether to
incorporate comments from the public and First Nation and Métis communities in the final
list of required alterations, the MNRF district manager will decide. An issue resolution
decision (Part A, Section 2.4.1) made during the public review of the draft FMP will be
reflected in the final list of required alterations. The MNRF will make the necessary changes
to the list of required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest
cover will be certified by an MNRF registered professional forester.

Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will provide the final
list of required alterations to:

(a) the sustainable forest licensee;
(b) the plan author; and
(c) the LCC.

Under the authority of the MNRF district manager, MNRF will provide a written response to
describe actions (if any) taken to address changes requested to the LTMD or proposed
operations during the public review of the draft FMP to:

(a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and
(b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a
requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations or written response provided will be accompanied by a
notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific
decision in the FMP by the MNRF regional director, in accordance with Steps 5 to 7 of the
issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.

1.5.3 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan Summary

The FMP will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based on the final list of
required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that summarizes how the
required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the FMP to facilitate the MNRF
review. A list of major changes to the draft FMP will be prepared and will be included in the
supplementary documentation of the FMP.
The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the FMP to the LCC. After that presentation, the LCC will confirm or update the brief statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the FMP. The statement will be provided to the MNRF district manager for inclusion with the approved FMP that is available for public inspection.

If requested by the MNRF regional director, prior to submission of the FMP to MNRF for review and approval, the plan author and representatives of the planning team, including the representative of the LCC, will make a presentation of the FMP to the MNRF regional director. The MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the presentation.

The draft FMP summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the FMP. A French version of the summary will be prepared. The plan author will submit the English and French versions of the FMP summary. The FMP summary will be available with the MNRF-approved FMP that is available for public inspection.

1.5.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A) of the FMP. The approval page will note the forest information portal submission identifier. Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA, Figure B-1B will be included in the FMP. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs. For those components of the revised FMP that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also complete and sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1C. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page.

The plan author will submit the revised FMP for MNRF review. The plan author will also submit documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revised FMP, to facilitate the MNRF review. A period of approximately 15 days is provided for MNRF review and approval of the FMP.

After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF regional resources manager, the MNRF district manager and MNRF regional resources manager will sign the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A), and recommend the FMP for approval by the MNRF regional director. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs.
The MNRF district manager’s and MNRF regional resources manager’s signatures on the title, certification and approval page certifies that:

(a) the FMP has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with First Nation and Métis peoples); and has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides;

(b) all silvicultural treatments in the SGRs which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guide(s) have been identified; and

(c) all operational prescriptions or conditions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides have been identified.

If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF district manager’s and MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendations, the MNRF regional director will approve the FMP. The approval of the FMP by the MNRF regional director confirms that the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit. The MNRF will identify the forest information portal submission being approved on the Title Certification and Approval Page. Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA, the Minister (or Minister’s delegate) will sign Figure B-1B: Application of Section 18 of the *Endangered Species Act*. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs.

### 1.5.5 Distribution of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.5, the MNRF-approved FMP, and the FMP summary will be available for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the FMP.

The English and French versions of the FMP summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

### 1.5.6 Stage Five – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

After the requirements in Sections 1.5.1 to 1.5.5 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.5, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.
1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

The approved FMP will be available for public viewing for the 10-year period of the FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. The English and French versions of the approved FMP summary will also be available. Interested and affected persons, organizations, First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the FMP.
2.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

2.1 Introduction

The FMP will be prepared in an open consultative fashion. A LCC will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team in the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section 2.2).

Opportunities for ongoing participation in the preparation of the FMP by interested and affected persons, organizations, First Nation and Métis communities, and the general public of Ontario are provided through a formal public consultation process (Part A, Section 2.3). As described in Part A, Section 1.0, five formal public consultation opportunities will be provided during the preparation and approval of the FMP. In addition, members of the public are encouraged to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the LCC during the preparation of the FMP.

A formal process is provided for the resolution of issues that may arise during the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section 2.4.1). As well, a formal process is provided for any person(s) to make a request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment on specific planned forest management operations in the FMP (Part A, Section 2.4.2).

2.2 Local Citizens’ Committee

2.2.1 Introduction

A LCC, comprised of local citizens’ representing a range and balance of interests, will be established by the MNRF district manager, in accordance with the requirements of the CFSA, for the applicable MNRF district or management unit. The LCC will assist the plan author, the interdisciplinary planning team and MNRF in the preparation and implementation of the FMP.

2.2.2 Purpose

The LCC will participate as an integral part of the preparation and implementation of the FMP by:

(a) nominating a representative of the committee to serve as a member of the planning team, if desired by the committee. Other committee members may attend planning team meetings as observers;

(b) attending joint meetings with the planning team, to be held at agreed-upon stages of the planning process;

(c) ensuring that all local interests are effectively communicated to all others involved in forest management planning;
increasing the effectiveness of the public consultation process by:

(i) participating in its implementation;
(ii) providing advice to the planning team on the content and presentation of information and maps at information centres;
(iii) having representatives attend and participate at information centres; and
(iv) providing advice on any additional public consultation opportunities that would be useful in the context of local circumstances and needs;

(e) participating in a meeting with the planning team to discuss the desired forest and benefits;

(f) participating in the development, identification and description of management objectives, strategies, problems and issues;

(g) participating in the development of values maps;

(h) promoting integration of all interests by participating in the evaluation of trade-offs which must be made during the planning process, and the resolution of problems, differences and conflicts as early as possible in the planning process;

(i) providing opportunities to participate in the formal issue resolution process;

(j) providing advice to the MNRF when discretionary decisions must be made (e.g., categorization of amendments, and issue resolution decisions);

(k) producing regular reports of the committee’s activities;

(l) assisting in the monitoring of performance of plan implementation;

(m) participating in the independent forest audit process by having the opportunity:

(i) to provide comments on the preparation and implementation of the FMP;
(ii) to identify concerns and issues;
(iii) to provide a representative to participate in field visits; and
(iv) to provide any other relevant information; and

(n) providing input to the development of district insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0) by having representative(s) of the LCC(s) invited to serve on the interdisciplinary team which produces a district insect pest management program.

2.2.3 Membership and Organization

The LCC will be a standing committee with members appointed by the MNRF district manager. Where a management unit crosses MNRF administrative boundaries, the MNRF district manager from the lead district will establish the LCC in consultation with the other MNRF district manager(s).
Normally, there will be a single LCC for a management unit. However, the MNRF district manager may establish additional LCCs or sub-committees, where a management unit encompasses a large geographic area with many communities.

The MNRF district manager and the LCC(s) will develop a protocol which describes how multiple LCCs or sub-committees will function. The protocol will address the roles and inter-relationships of the multiple committees or sub-committees in public consultation, development of the LTMD, planning of operations, preparation of local citizen’s committee reports and independent forest audits. In the development of the protocol, identification of a lead committee will be considered. The protocol will be included in the terms of reference for the LCC(s) (Part A, Section 2.2.4).

The membership of the LCC will include local citizens representing a range and balance of interests from the communities within or adjacent to the management unit. The majority of appointments will be drawn from nominations provided by local interest groups. Persons directly employed by the sustainable forest licensee preparing the FMP are eligible to be members, but will not make up the majority of the committee.

Where they exist at the local level, the main interests represented on the LCC should include:

(a) local business;
(b) tourism industry;
(c) anglers and hunters;
(d) First Nation and Métis communities;
(e) forest industry;
(f) naturalists;
(g) municipalities;
(h) trappers and other resource users;
(i) other Crown land recreationalists;
(j) forest industry trade unions;
(k) woodworkers;
(l) small independent loggers;
(m) mineral sector;
(n) waterpower sector;
(o) chamber of commerce member or economic development officer;
(p) local environmental groups;
(q) local heritage groups or organizations;
(r) other interest groups; and
(s) the general public.
2.2.4 Terms of Reference

Terms of reference for the LCC will be reviewed and updated at the beginning of planning for the FMP. For each management unit, the LCC(s) will develop a single terms of reference, with assistance from MNRF. The terms of reference will be available for public distribution, upon request.

The terms of reference will contain:

(a) the name of each committee member and his/her affiliation;
(b) the date of each member’s appointment to the committee;
(c) the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and individual committee members, including how each committee member will report back to and/or obtain input from the constituency he or she represents;
(d) the process for selecting members, the term of service, and a description of how a range and balance of interests will be maintained on the committee;
(e) key dates for the committee in the preparation of the FMP, (e.g., meetings prior to information centres and submission of draft and final plans, dates for committee reports);
(f) responsibility for minutes of committee meetings;
(g) required funding;
(h) rules, developed by and for the committee, with respect to any procedural matters required to meet its responsibilities in forest management planning and plan implementation, including:
   (i) how the chair of the committee will be selected;
   (ii) frequency of, and attendance at, committee meetings;
   (iii) development of agendas for committee meetings;
   (iv) attendance at information centres by committee members;
   (v) circulation of information among committee members;
   (vi) selection of the committee representative who will serve as a member of the planning team;
   (vii) selection of alternates for the chair of the committee, and for the representative to the planning team;
   (viii) procedures regarding the declaration of conflicts of interest by individual committee members, and how the committee will address those declarations; and
   (ix) preparation of committee reports; and
(i) when applicable, a protocol which describes how multiple committees or sub-committees will function (Part A, Section 2.2.3).
2.2.5 Administration

The MNRF may reimburse members of the LCC for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses in connection with their participation in the preparation and implementation of the FMP, in accordance with applicable government policies and directives. The MNRF may provide the committee representative who serves as a member of the planning team with a reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings in accordance with applicable government policies and directives.

The MNRF will provide the necessary office support to the committee (e.g., secretarial support and typing of committee reports), to assist the committee in the efficient and effective conduct of its affairs. The MNRF will ensure that training material on the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and forest management planning matters, is available.

The MNRF will provide any available information reasonably required by the committee to the committee. This information will be provided as it becomes available, to ensure achievement of the committee purposes.

2.2.6 Reports and Records

During the preparation of the FMP, the LCC will produce reports of its activities. Responsibilities for the preparation of these reports will be set out in the terms of reference for the LCC. In situations where multiple LCCs or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single committee report will be prepared.

The LCC report for the FMP will include:

(a) a list of all members of the LCC, and their affiliations, if any;

(b) the committee’s activities during the preparation of the FMP, such as:
   (i) the number and dates of committee meetings which were held during the planning process;
   (ii) the number and dates for joint meetings with the planning team;
   (iii) summary of training opportunities provided for committee members and recommendations for improvements;
   (iv) participation in the development of the values maps and the LTMD;
   (v) participation in public consultation efforts (e.g., information centres); and
   (vi) participation in the issue resolution process;

(c) a discussion of the problems and issues addressed by the committee;

(d) an assessment of the cooperation provided to the committee by MNRF and the plan author;

(e) an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee(s) structure and any recommendations for change; and
(f) a discussion of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the FMP.

The committee will report on its activities at the following stages of public consultation:

(a) stage two – a report of committee activities to date;
(b) stage three – an updated report of committee activities to date;
(c) stage four:
   (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft FMP; and
   (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft forest management plan summary; and
(d) stage five:
   (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved FMP; and
   (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the FMP summary.

The reports and all other documentation produced by the committee will be available for public review. The final reports of the committee will form part of the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

2.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation

Each FMP and FMP summary will contain a list of all members of the LCC, and their affiliations, if any.

Each FMP will contain a brief statement at the beginning of the plan that reports on the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan and is included as part of Part B, Figure B-3. The statement will indicate that the committee’s report is included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. In situations where multiple LCCs or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single statement that represents the agreement or disagreement of all committees will be prepared.

2.3 Public Consultation Requirements

2.3.1 Introduction

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages (Figure A-1). The requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning are described in Part A, Sections 3.4 and 3.5.
2.3.2 General Requirements

This section describes general requirements of public consultation. These general requirements address public notices, communications with the planning team and LCC, MNRF’s obligations to respond to public comments and submissions, the French Language Services Act, 1990 (FLSA) and the Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993 (EBR).

2.3.2.1 Public Notices

Public notices will be issued at each stage of public consultation. The timing and contents of each public notice are outlined in Part A, Sections 2.3.3. The information that will be available at each stage of public consultation is also described. Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations on MNRF’s mailing list. At a minimum, the mailing list will include:

(a) local and regional offices of relevant government ministries and agencies, and their successors, and in particular:
   (i) local school boards;
   (ii) local medical officers of health;
   (iii) each municipality and planning board, and where appropriate, local services board and Chamber of Commerce;
   (iv) manager, Operational Services, regional office, Ministry of Transportation;
   (v) provincial programs engineer, Hydro One;
   (vi) regional office, MOECC;
   (vii) Manager, Heritage Program Unit, Ministry of Tourism, Culture and Sport; (Culture);
   (viii) Manager, Northern Policy and Planning Unit, Ministry of Tourism, Culture, and Sport;
   (ix) regional office, Ministry of Northern Development and Mines;
   Department of Indigenous and Northern Affairs (Canada);
   (x) Department of Fisheries and Oceans (Canada) – Central and Arctic Region;
   (xi) Environment Canada – Ontario Region; and
   (xii) Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency – Ontario Region;
(b) each First Nation and Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the preparation and implementation of the FMP;
(c) appropriate Indigenous organizations;
(d) known local, regional and provincial organizations and associations with an interest in forest management planning for the management unit; 
(e) members of the LCC; and 
(f) individual members of the public with a known interest in forest management planning for the management unit, including those people who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the 10-year period of the FMP, such as private land owners, tourist operators and trappers. 

MNRF will make all reasonable efforts to identify individuals who may be directly affected, by means such as direct contact and consulting records of registered trapline areas and mining lands.

As additional interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities are identified, MNRF will update the mailing list.

Media notices will also be provided in advertisements in the local media. Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

Each media and direct written notice will contain:

(a) an explanation of the purpose of the stage of consultation, and its relationship to other stages; 
(b) a map of the management unit; 
(c) a description of the information available; 
(d) identification of the forum (e.g., information centre) for consultation, where applicable, including the location(s), date(s) and time(s); 
(e) a request for contributions to the background information; 
(f) a request for comments on material available for review; 
(g) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act, (1990); and 
(h) the names of MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts and information concerning how to contact.

Additional content requirements of the direct written notice for each stage of public consultation are described in Part A, Sections 2.3.3.
Additional Information Centres

The planning team, with advice from the LCC, may choose to hold information centres in addition to the required information centres at stages three and four. If an additional information centre(s) will be held, a public notice will be required, and will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

Supplemental Notices

For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and First Nation and Métis communities of the information centre.

2.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens’ Committee Communication

The planning team will make reasonable efforts to communicate with interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities to seek their input into the planning process and to facilitate contact between them and the LCC. For example, the planning team will consult with affected trappers and recreationalists to identify recreational trails and trails used for accessing working traplines.

Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange for meetings with representatives of the planning team and the LCC at any time during the planning process. Reasonable opportunities to meet planning team members during non-business hours will be provided.

2.3.2.3 Responses to Comments

The MNRF, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing, in a timely way, to all written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the preparation of a FMP that relate to the LTMD or proposed operations. The MNRF will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single response to the person or organization that initiated the letter. The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments if a written response has been requested. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been considered. All comments, submissions and responses will be summarized in the public consultation summary that forms part of the supplementary documentation of the FMP (Part B, Section 6.1).
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

2.3.2.4 French Language Services Act

The FLSA will govern the French language public consultation requirements for forest management planning.

At a minimum, the following requirements will apply in designated areas under the act:

(a) all public notices in the English language will include a sentence, in French, which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be obtained in the French language;

(b) public notices in the French language are required if there are French language media; these notices will include a sentence, in English, which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be obtained in the English language;

(c) French-speaking staff will be available to assist the French-speaking public at all information centres or other consultation forums;

(d) comment forms will be available in the English and French languages; and

(e) written French language responses will be provided to all written French language comments and submissions.

For all management units:

(a) the summary of the proposed LTMD available at stages two and three of public consultation (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.2 and 2.3.3.3) will be available on the Ontario Government website in the English and French languages; and

(b) the FMP summary available at stages four and five of public consultation (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.4 and 2.3.3.5) will be available on the Ontario Government website in the English and French languages.

2.3.2.5 Environmental Bill of Rights

Under the provisions of the EBR, MNRF will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial Environmental Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued for each stage of public consultation.

A Registry Information Notice will be placed on the Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at stage one of public consultation. At each successive stage of public consultation, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on the Environmental Registry.

The MNRF’s guide for the preparation of Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance to prepare these notices.
2.3.3 Formal Public Consultation

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in FMP preparation and approval.

2.3.3.1 Stage One – Invitation to Participate

Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to participate in the development of the FMP. This notice will be issued after the planning team has completed the necessary preparatory work, to enable the commencement of formal public consultation (Part A, Section 1.1).

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) to advise the public that the preparation of the FMP for the management unit is beginning;
(b) to provide the public access to information to be used in the forest management planning process;
(c) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning;
(d) to request the public’s views on the desired forest for the management unit, and desired benefits from the forest which can be achieved through the management of forest cover; and
(e) to invite members of the public to meet and discuss their interests with the planning team, plan author and LCC.

Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a brief description of each stage of public consultation in the preparation of the FMP;
(b) a statement that encourages public involvement as early as possible in the planning process;
(c) a statement that further information about the forest management planning process, and background information to be used in the preparation of the plan, is available for the period of plan preparation;
(d) a statement that requests the public to provide additional background information, or to identify concerns which need to be addressed during the planning process, to the plan author, the MNRF and/or the LCC; and
(e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available to the public at the appropriate MNRF office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:

(a) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest companies (if any), and MNRF (if any)), and a description of the forest industry which is supplied from the management unit;

(b) the current version of the values maps for the management unit, including the resource-based tourism values map;

(c) a list of the sources of the information which is summarized on the values maps or otherwise available in the database; identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those subjects for which data are recognized as being incomplete or missing;

(d) a request for the public to provide any additional information relating to important ecological features and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values maps;

(e) a list of the sources of the information used to update the planning inventory;

(f) a landscape pattern map of current forest condition;

(g) a map of existing roads, and for each road or road network, the responsibility assignment and existing information on the use management strategy;

(h) information regarding the historic forest condition for the management unit;

(i) the enhanced management unit annual report for the current FMP and the final year management unit annual report for the previous FMP, or reports of past forest operations for the previous 15 years;

(j) the current FMP for the management unit;

(k) a list of current audits or reports prepared by or for MNRF pertaining to the management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and information on how the public may access these documents;

(l) audits or reports prepared by or for MNRF pertaining to forest management generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Reports on Forest Management and State of the Forest Reports) and information on how the public may access these documents;

(m) sources of direction (Part A, Section 1.1.8.1), and information on how the public may access these documents;
(n) a list of MNRF's forest management guides which are applicable to the management unit, and information on how the public may access these documents;
(o) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report for the current approved FMP;
(p) copies of MNRF's brochure on forest management planning; and
(q) a comment form.

2.3.3.2 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice, which invites the public to review the proposed LTMD for the forest. Information and maps will be available for public review and comment at the appropriate MNRF office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. Members of the planning team will be available to discuss the material.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:
(a) for the public to review and comment on:
   (i) the proposed LTMD for the forest;
   (ii) the areas which could reasonably be harvested, and the preferred areas for harvest operations, during the 10-year period of the plan;
   (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years; and
(b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at this stage of public consultation (i.e., the LTMD for the forest);
(b) a statement that the following information may be obtained from the appropriate MNRF office(s) and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:
   (i) a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest; and
   (ii) a summary map(s) of:
       • the preferred and optional harvest areas for the 10-year period of the plan; and
       • the confirmed primary road corridors and alternative corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

(c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);

(d) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the LCC; and

(e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at stage one of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at the appropriate MNRF office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee when the public notice is issued:

(a) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1);

(b) a summary of public comments and submissions, which have been received to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;

(c) a summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting;

(d) a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest, including the summary map (Part A, Section 1.2.7);

(e) the analysis package;

(f) FMP-1 through FMP-10;

(g) criteria for use in the identification of areas that could reasonably be harvested during the 10-year period of the plan;

(h) maps which portray:

(i) the preferred and optional harvest areas for the 10-year period of the plan;

(ii) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current FMP and the previous 10 years;

(iii) confirmed primary road corridors; and

(iv) alternative corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;

(i) the rationale for the preferred areas for harvest, including a discussion how the applicable MNRF guide(s) were considered;

(j) the environmental analysis, including use management strategies, of the alternative corridors for each new primary road;

(k) a request for the public to provide additional information relating to important ecological features and values that potentially could be affected by
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values maps;
(l) a summary report of the activities of the LCC to date; and
(m) a comment form.

The summary of the proposed LTMD will also be available for public review on the Ontario Government website during the 30-day public review period. The summary of the proposed LTMD will be available for public distribution, upon request. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the proposed LTMD.

2.3.3.3 Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the 10-year period of the forest management plan. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on:
   (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan;
   (ii) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-year period of the plan; and
   (iii) the proposed operational road boundaries for the 10-year period of the plan; and

(b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at the information centre (i.e., the details of access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period;

(b) a statement that the following information may be obtained at the information centre:
   (i) a summary of the MNRF regional director preliminary endorsed LTMD; and
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

(ii) a summary map(s) of:
   • the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan; and
   • the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads which are required for the 10-year period of the plan;

(c) a statement that the information and maps available at the information centre will also be available for review for a 60-day period after the information centre;

(d) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);

(e) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the LCC;

(f) the projected date for draft plan submission; and

(g) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at stage two of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1);

(b) a summary of comments and submissions which have been received to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;

(c) the list of required modifications resulting from the public review of the LTMD;

(d) a summary of the MNRF regional director preliminary endorsed LTMD;

(e) the proposed SGRs;

(f) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan; the optional areas for harvest operations; areas of bridging operations (if any); areas of second-pass harvest operations (if any); and the proposed contingency areas;

(g) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads, and planned operational road boundaries which are required for the 10-year period of the plan;

(h) for the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan:

(i) the proposed aggregate extraction areas;
(ii) proposed conditions on the locations and/or construction of primary, branch, and operational road crossings of individual, or groups of, areas of concern;

(iii) proposed conditions on forestry aggregate pits and landings within individual, or groups of, areas of concern;

(iv) proposed conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits outside of areas of concern; and

(v) the proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for individual, or groups of, areas of concern, and where required (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1), the environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions;

(i) the proposed use management strategies for individual roads or networks of roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee or other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes;

(j) FMP-11 through FMP-20;

(k) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3); and

(l) a summary map(s) of:

(i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan;

(ii) the optional areas for harvest

(iii) the proposed corridors for primary roads which are required for the next 20 years;

(iv) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-year period of the plan; and

(m) a comment form.

At the information centre, the summary map(s) will be available for public distribution, upon request. In the material available at the information centre, MNRF will include a request for the public to provide additional information relating to important ecological features and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values map(s).

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

2.3.3.4 Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

Stage four of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held after the MNRF review of the draft FMP. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.
The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment on the draft FMP and MNRF’s preliminary list of required alterations. Comments from the public will be considered in the finalization of the list of required alterations to the draft FMP.

Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the draft FMP and draft FMP summary are available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website during the 60-day public review period;
(b) a statement that the draft FMP summary may be obtained at the information centre;
(c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(d) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the LCC;
(e) the projected date for MNRF approval of the plan; and
(f) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or the MNRF regional director, and identifies the last date to request issue resolution (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at stage three of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) the draft FMP, including the supplementary documentation;
(b) the draft FMP summary (Part A, Section 1.4.5);
(c) MNRF’s preliminary list of required alterations;
(d) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the final Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3); and
(e) a comment form.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

The information and maps will also be available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website during the 60-day public review period. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNRF staff at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the draft FMP.

Final List of Required Alterations

As described in Part A, Section 1.5.2, after the completion of the public review of the draft FMP, MNRF will consider the comments that were received and produce a final list of required alterations.

Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will provide the final list of required alterations to:

(a) the sustainable forest licensee;
(b) the plan author; and
(c) the LCC.

Under the authority of the MNRF district manager, MNRF will provide a written response to describe actions (if any) taken to address the requested change to:

(a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and
(b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations or written response provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the FMP by the MNRF regional director, in accordance with steps 5 to 7 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.

2.3.3.5 Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

Stage five of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which advises the public that the MNRF-approved FMP is available for inspection. This notice will be issued upon approval of the FMP by the MNRF regional director.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the FMP has been approved by the MNRF regional director, and to provide an opportunity for the public to inspect the MNRF-approved FMP.
Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the MNRF-approved FMP and FMP summary are available for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website; and

(b) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any person to make a written request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations, in the FMP, in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.2.

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website:

(a) the MNRF-approved FMP, including the supplementary documentation; and

(b) the FMP summary (Part A, Section 1.5.3).

2.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

After public inspection, the approved FMP will be available for public viewing for the 10-year period of the FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the FMP.

The English and French versions of the FMP summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

2.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

2.4.1 Issue Resolution Process

There are times when a person(s) may identify a concern with the proposed LTMD or proposed operations in the preparation of a FMP, contingency plan, long-term FMP extension, minor amendment, major amendment, amendment to the LTMD, or an insect pest management program. When informal discussions do not result in a resolution of the
The plan author will advise the concerned person(s) of the opportunity to make a written submission requesting the formal issue resolution process.

There may be situations where numerous individuals identify the same issue(s) in their request for formal issue resolution (e.g., cottage association, municipality). When this situation occurs, the district manager and/or the regional director may determine that all or some of the requests be heard together in an issue resolution meeting(s) and may specify the time, date and location of such meeting(s). The district manager and/or the regional director will provide an opportunity for the concerned requestors to nominate a representative(s) to bring forward the issue(s) on their behalf.

During the preparation and review of a FMP for the 10-year period, if a request for issue resolution is received prior to the draft FMP being available for public review, the request will progress through two stages, if required, starting with the MNRF district manager, and if required, the MNRF regional director. If a request is received during the period for public review of the draft FMP, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the MNRF district manager. If a request is received after the completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft FMP, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the MNRF regional director. The last date to request the issue resolution process will be 30 days after the completion of the period for public review of the draft FMP.

If a person(s) is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process, there is an opportunity to make a written request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations, as described in Part A, Section 2.4.2.

Each stage of the formal issue resolution process involves interaction among the concerned person(s), the plan author, the MNRF district manager and where applicable, the MNRF regional director, with opportunities for the involvement of the LCC. For each issue, a written response will be provided to the concerned person(s) following each stage of issue resolution which provides the rationale for the decision. The issue resolution documentation will be summarized and included in the summary of public consultation of the FMP. If an issue resolution decision influences the location or road use management strategy for a road, or a prescription or condition for an area of concern, the supplementary documentation for the road or area of concern will reference the summary of issue resolution that is included in the summary of public consultation of the FMP. Planning required as a result of an issue resolution decision will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of the FMPM and the FIM.

Figure A-4 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process, and the opportunity to request an individual environmental assessment.
2.4.1.1 MNRF District Manager Stage

The MNRF district manager stage applies to a request received prior to completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft FMP.
Figure A-4: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages

Preparing the Ten-Year Forest Management Plan

Stage One: Invitation to Participate
Stage Two: Review of Long-Term Management Direction
Stage Three: Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations
Stage Four: Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan
Stage Five: Inspection of MNRF Approved Plan

All stages of issue resolution apply. For any new request for issue resolution prior to completion of the 60 day public review of draft plan, the process begins with the district manager.

NOTE: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Process</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNRF district manager, which includes a description of the issue, and preferably, a proposed solution. To facilitate scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>MNRF will contact the concerned person(s) to confirm the date and location of the meeting to discuss, and attempt to resolve the issue. MNRF will invite the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representatives on the planning team, and one or more members of the LCC. If a meeting is arranged, the MNRF district manager will attend. If a meeting could not be arranged, the MNRF district manager will ask each of the plan author, the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and the LCC to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNRF district manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>If the meeting resulted in a resolution on the issue, the resolution will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4</td>
<td>If the meeting did not provide a resolution, or the meeting could not be arranged, the MNRF district manager will provide a written decision, with rationale, to the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the LCC and the MNRF regional director, normally within 15 days. The MNRF district manager’s written decision will indicate that there is an opportunity for the concerned person(s) to request a review of his/her decision by the MNRF regional director within 30 days (the actual date will be stated in the letter).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.4.1.2 MNRF Regional Director Stage

The MNRF regional director stage applies when:

(a) a concerned person(s) requests a review of the district manager’s decision; or
(b) a new request is received during the 30 days following the completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft FMP.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Process</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 5</strong> Request</td>
<td>The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNRF regional director, which includes a description of the issue, and preferably, a proposed solution. To facilitate the scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting. Upon receipt of the submission, other persons known to be directly affected by the issue will be notified by MNRF that a formal review of a specific decision in the draft FMP has been requested.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 6</strong> Meeting</td>
<td>Normally within 15 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution, the MNRF will arrange a meeting of the MNRF regional director, plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and one or more members of the LCC, to seek resolution of the issue. If a meeting could not be arranged, the MNRF regional director will ask each of the MNRF district manager, the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and the LCC, to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNRF regional director.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step 7</strong> Regional Director Decision</td>
<td>The MNRF regional director will consider the results of the meeting and/or the written submissions and produce a written decision on the issue, with rationale, normally within 15 days of the meeting. The MNRF regional director will provide a copy of the written decision, with rationale, to the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the LCC, and the MNRF district manager. The MNRF regional director’s written decision concerning a FMP, amendment to a LTMD, or major amendment will include a statement that if the concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the MNRF regional director’s decision, there is an opportunity to make a written request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations. The request must be made during the period for public inspection of the MNRF-approved FMP, approved major amendment, or approved amendment to a LTMD.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.4.2 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

Declaration Order MNR-75 provides an opportunity for an individual to request an individual environmental assessment in limited circumstances. A request is normally made when a concerned person is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process (Part A, Section 2.4.1).

A request for an individual environmental assessment is only available for:

(a) specific planned operations in the MNRF-approved FMP;
(b) a change to specific planned operations resulting from a major amendment to a FMP; or
(c) a change to specific planned operations resulting from an amendment to the LTMD for the FMP.

A person may request an individual environmental assessment by making a written request to the Director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC within 30 days of MNRF providing notice of the following:

(a) approval of a FMP;
(b) approval of a major amendment to a FMP; or
(c) approval of an amendment to the LTMD of a FMP.

The person making the request for an individual environmental assessment shall include the following information with their request:

(a) a description of the specific planned operations or change to the specific planned operations of concern, and a map that identifies the geographic locations of the specific planned operations or changes to the specific planned operations;
(b) an explanation of the requester’s concern with the specific planned operations or change to the specific planned operations; and
(c) a description of the requester’s participation in the forest management planning process, including participation in issue resolution.

The process for administering a request for an individual environmental assessment is set out in condition 26 of Declaration Order MNR-75.
3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING

3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning. This section also describes the opportunity to develop customized consultation approaches for First Nation and Métis communities and the consultation requirements if a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation and Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through consultation with First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate accommodate.

Additional requirements regarding the involvement of First Nations in forest management planning for Far North management units added to the AOU are described in Part F of this FMPM.

3.1.1 First Nation and Métis communities

For the purposes of this manual:

- A First Nation community means a First Nation community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with this section of the manual.
- A Métis community means a Métis community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with this section of the manual.
- Traditional uses may include established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights.

For each community that Ontario understands as having established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights and is located in Ontario, the MNRF district manager will consider the following criteria when determining whether the community is a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to a management unit:
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

(a) whether the community’s established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights may be adversely impacted by forest activities, governed by this manual, in the management unit.

(b) whether the community has traditional uses that may be affected by forest activities, governed by this manual, in the management unit.

(c) whether the community has a local governance body or reserve in or near the management unit.

(d) whether the community has expressed interest in forest management planning or forest operations specific to the management unit.

The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community at least nine months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the preparation of the forest management plan to inform the community of the opportunities to be involved in the preparation and implementation of the FMP, including the opportunity to develop a customized consultation approach (Part A, Section 3.4). This communication will specify that the customized consultation approach can include some or all of the elements listed in Part A, Section 3.4 and that the consultation process set out in Part A, Section 3.5 of the FMPM will apply if a customized consultation approach is not agreed upon.

This communication will be repeated, for those communities that did not respond to the initial communication, at least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process. At least one month prior to the commencement of the formal consultation process, the MNRF district manager will contact those communities that did not respond to either communication to confirm that the consultation process set out in Part A, Section 3.5 of the FMPM will apply.

For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, MNRF may consult with the community through a process that is not governed by the FMPM.

3.2 Planning Team

When appointing members to the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2), the MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to offer an opportunity for a representative of the community to participate on the planning team. If a First Nation or Métis community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be identified by the community’s leadership.

In their role as members of the planning team, First Nation and Métis community representatives are expected to share information about the planning process with their communities and to represent their communities on the planning team.
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

The MNRF may reimburse the First Nation or Métis member(s) of the planning team for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses, and may provide a reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings, in accordance with applicable government policies and directives.

If a First Nation or Métis community chooses not to participate on the planning team, and a customized consultation approach is developed for the community in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4, the approach may describe how the community will interact with the planning team.

3.3 Local Citizens’ Committee

When reviewing the membership of the LCC (Part A, Section 1.1.3), the MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to offer the opportunity for a representative of the community to participate on the LCC. If a First Nation or Métis community chooses to participate on the LCC, the representative will be identified by the community leadership.

In their role as member(s) of the LCC, First Nation and Métis community representatives are expected to share information about the planning process with their communities and to represent their communities on the LCC.

3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning

A customized consultation approach will provide for the involvement of the First Nation or Métis community in the preparation and implementation of the FMP.

If, in response to the MNRF district manager’s communications prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process, a First Nation or Métis community expresses an interest in developing a customized consultation approach, representatives of the community, MNRF, and the plan author will work together to develop the approach. In the development of the approach, the First Nation or Métis community may choose to coordinate efforts with other First Nation or Métis communities, or seek advice from an Indigenous organization. An existing customized consultation approach may be considered in the development of the approach. Where MNRF and the First Nation or Métis community have entered into an existing consultation agreement or protocol outside of the forest management planning process, the customized consultation approach will reflect the agreement or protocol, where applicable. The First Nation or Métis community and MNRF need to agree to the approach, otherwise the consultation process set out in Part A, Section 3.5 will apply.
Normally, the customized consultation approach will be agreed upon by the community and MNRF prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for a FMP (stage one). However, if a consultation approach is not agreed upon by the start of stage one, the requirements described in Part A, Section 3.5 will apply until an agreed upon approach is developed.

If an agreed upon customized consultation approach is developed, the consultation approach will apply during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. If MNRF and the First Nation or Métis community agree, changes to the customized consultation approach may be made during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. If an agreed upon customized consultation approach has been developed, but the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the approach, the following requirements will apply:

(a) Part A, Section 3.5, for FMPs;
(b) Part C, Section 8.0, for amendments to FMPs, contingency plans, FMP extensions, and mid-plan checks; and
(c) Part D, Section 8.0, for annual operations.

The customized consultation approach for each community may address the community’s involvement in some or all of the following:

(a) the preparation of the FMP;
(b) contingency plans;
(c) FMP extensions;
(d) minor or major amendments to FMPs;
(e) amendments to the long-term management direction;
(f) mid-plan checks;
(g) annual work schedules;
(h) prescribed burn plans;
(i) aerial herbicide and insecticide projects; and
(j) insect pest management programs.

In the development of the customized consultation approach, the information and timing requirements of the formal public consultation process will be considered to ensure that the schedule for plan preparation and implementation is maintained.

The consultation approach will normally include requirements regarding notices, consultation forums, information availability, written responses to comments and submissions, and opportunities to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the LCC. The consultation approach will normally also address:

(a) the primary contact person(s) for the community;
(b) the preferred language for correspondence and notices;
(c) specific information or summaries which require translation;
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

(d) contents and formats of notices;
(e) identification of local Indigenous media which are used by the community;
(f) a process for exchanging necessary information in a timely manner;
(g) timing, notification, content and format of consultation forums such as community meetings or First Nation and Métis community information centres;
(h) involvement in the preparation and review of the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1), including the First Nation and Métis values map, and the public availability of First Nation and Métis values information;
(i) involvement in the planning of operations to protect First Nation and Métis values; and
(j) involvement in the preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3).

3.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Customized Consultation Approach

If a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community is not agreed upon in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, or if an agreed upon customized consultation approach has been developed but the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

For each notice required in connection with the preparation for a FMP, a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community in English, and upon request, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in the local Indigenous media where available.

Each time a public information centre is scheduled, the MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information centre. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information centre will be provided.

3.5.1 Forest Management Plans

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part A, Section 2.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.
3.5.1.1 Consultation

Stage One – Invitation to Participate

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.1, and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

(a) an invitation to identify First Nation or Métis values and participate in the preparation of the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) and the community demographic profile (Part A, Section 3.6.2); and

(b) a request to advise MNRF if and how the community wishes to participate in the preparation of the report.

Preparation of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to invite the community to participate in the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1).

The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a presentation of the proposed long-term management direction and the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3). If one or more communities express an interest, a presentation will be offered and those communities will be invited to attend.

Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.2, and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

(a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report and the community demographic profile,

(b) an invitation to participate in the planning of forest management operations to address identified First Nation and Métis values, the results of which will be reflected in the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3);
a request to advise MNRF if and how the community wishes to participate in
the planning of forest operations to address identified First Nation and Métis
values.

Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.3,
and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to
the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

(a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft First Nation and
Métis Background Information Report and the community demographic
profile;
(b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft Report on
Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3); and
(c) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information centre, if
such an information centre was requested by the First Nation or Métis
community.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the
information centre(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4,
and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to
the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

(a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft Report on
Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values;
(b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft FMP, which may
include the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part B,
Section 6.1); and
(c) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information centre, if
such an information centre was requested by the First Nation or Métis
community.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the
information centre to remind the First Nation and Métis community.
PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

Stage Five – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Forest Management Plan

The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

3.6 Documentation

During the preparation of a FMP, a number of documents related to First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be prepared. These documents include a First Nation and Métis Background Information Report, a Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values and a Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement and Consultation. The MNRF shall seek advice from each First Nation and Métis community regarding the public availability of all or part of First Nation and Métis values information in those documents, having regard to MNRF’s legal obligations with respect to the management of information.

3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report

MNRF will invite First Nation and Métis communities to identify First Nation and Métis values and participate in the preparation of the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report, or review and update the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report. Traditional ecological knowledge, where available and applicable to forest management, may be a source of information. The First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will include:

(a) a summary of the use of natural resources on the management unit, particularly with respect to hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting of wood for domestic purposes, and gathering;
(b) a summary of forest management-related concerns;
(c) a summary of the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of the report; and
(d) a First Nation and Métis values map.

Those values that are of importance to the First Nation and Métis communities and that may be affected by forest operations in the management unit will be portrayed on the First Nation and Métis values map.

First Nation and Métis Values information includes:

(a) local governance body(s) or reserve(s) in or near the management unit;
(b) areas used by First Nation and Métis communities, particularly with respect to hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting wood for domestic purposes, and gathering;

(c) lands that have been identified as potential reserve lands for social, economic or capital development projects, or in connection with land claims or litigation;

(d) sites of First Nation and Métis archaeological, social, cultural, and sacred significance, including First Nation and Métis cemeteries and burial sites;

(e) areas identified by the First Nation and Métis communities during the archaeological predictive modelling process as having archaeological potential; and

(f) lands or resources over which the community has made assertions of Aboriginal or treaty rights, including assertions of Aboriginal title.

Where assertions are included as part of First Nation and Métis values information or appear on the First Nation and Métis values map, they will be accompanied by the following statement: The inclusion/depiction of this information does not necessarily reflect the position of Ontario regarding the nature or strength of the assertion or constitute any admission or limit Ontario’s rights in any way. In particular, the inclusion/depiction of this information does not constitute an admission by Ontario that the assertion engages the Crown’s duty to consult or accommodate.

Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which case information may not be portrayed on the First Nation and Métis values map(s).

Having regard to MNRF’s legal obligations with respect to the management of information, MNRF shall seek advice from the First Nation and Métis communities regarding the degree to which, if at all, First Nation and Métis Values information should be made public.

3.6.2 Social and Economic Description

The social and economic description that will be prepared for the management unit, will include a demographic profile for each First Nation and Métis community (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11). The MNRF will contact each First Nation and Métis community to invite the community to participate in the preparation and review of the community demographic profile.

3.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values

The planning team, with the support of the MNRF district manager, will prepare the draft and final Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values. The Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values documents how values identified in
the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) that may be affected by the proposed forest operations in the management unit have been addressed in the planning of forest operations.

In the preparation of the FMP, a draft report will be available at the time of public review of the proposed operations for the 10-year period (stage three) and will include the following information:

(a) a summary of proposed operations;
(b) a discussion of proposed primary and branch road corridors of interest to the First Nation or Métis community;
(c) the most current version of the values map(s) and the First Nation and Métis values map;
(d) a discussion of proposed operational prescriptions for specific areas of concern associated with identified First Nation and Métis values;
(e) a discussion of how local First Nation and Métis values, including local First Nation and Métis hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting wood for domestic purposes, and gathering have been addressed in the planning of forest operations; and
(f) a comment sheet, and the names of a First Nation and Métis community contact person and an MNRF contact person.

The draft report will be available at the time of public review of the draft FMP (stage four), and will include:

(a) the draft FMP summary; and
(b) items (b) through (f) from stage three, including any update(s).

The final report will be available at the time of public inspection of the MNRF-approved forest management plan (stage five), and will include:

(a) the final forest management plan summary; and
(b) items (b) through (e) from stage three, including any updates from stage four.

During the preparation of an amendment to a FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be updated by MNRF, if forest operations proposed in the amendment have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

For a contingency plan, the planning proposal will identify the requirements for the preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part C, Section 3.2).
During the preparation of an AWS (Part D, Section 1.0), the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be updated by MNRF, if forest operations proposed in the AWS have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

3.6.4 Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement in the preparation of the FMP will be prepared by the MNRF. The summary will include:

(a) a list of the First Nation and Métis communities, and the primary contact person for each community;
(b) a list of the communities’ representatives on the planning team and LCC, where applicable;
(c) a summary of correspondence provided to each community;
(d) a summary of additional communication efforts with each community;
(e) a summary of comments or input received from each community, and a summary of planning team responses;
(f) a summary of First Nation and Métis community participation at public information centres and First Nation and Métis information centres, if such First Nation and Métis information centres were requested by the community; and
(g) a summary of the implementation of the customized consultation approach for each First Nation and Métis community, where applicable.

For those First Nation and Métis communities that agree, the Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft FMP, and an updated summary will be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved FMP.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of a minor and major amendment to a FMP (Part C, Sections 8.2 and 8.3), an amendment to the LTMD of a FMP (Part C, Sections 8.4), preparation of a deemed amendment (Part C, Section 8.5), preparation of a contingency plan (Part C, Section 8.6), preparation of a FMP extension (Part C, Section 8.7), preparation of a mid-plan check (Part C, Section 8.8), and annual operations (Part D, Section 8.0).
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. **PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT** .................................................................................. 6
2. **Phase-in Provisions** ................................................................................................................................. 6
3. **1.0 INTRODUCTION** ................................................................................................................................. 16
4. **2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION** .................................................................................................. 17
5. 2.1 Forest Description ...................................................................................................................................... 17
   2.1.1 Historic Forest Condition .................................................................................................................. 17
   2.1.2 Current Forest Condition .................................................................................................................. 17
   2.1.3 Forest Classification .......................................................................................................................... 17
      2.1.3.1 Forest Units and Analysis Units ................................................................................................. 17
      2.1.3.2 Forest Landscape Classes ........................................................................................................ 18
      2.1.3.3 Other Forest Classifications .................................................................................................... 18
   2.1.4 Forest Resources .................................................................................................................................. 18
      2.1.4.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk ........................................................................ 18
      2.1.4.2 Fish and Wildlife Inventories .................................................................................................... 19
      2.1.4.3 Values Information ................................................................................................................... 19
   2.2 Social and Economic Description ........................................................................................................... 20
      2.2.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context .................................................................................... 20
      2.2.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles ............................................................................................... 21
      2.2.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest ......................................................................... 21
   2.3 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report .......................................................................... 21
7. **3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION** ........................................... 22
8. 3.1 Introduction .............................................................................................................................................. 22
9. 3.2 Management Considerations ................................................................................................................ 22
10. 3.3 Base Model .......................................................................................................................................... 22
   3.3.1 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities ................................................................................................. 22
   3.3.2 Analysis of Past Silvicultural Performance .................................................................................... 22
11. 3.4 Desired Forest and Benefits .................................................................................................................. 23
12. 3.5 Strategic Management Zones ............................................................................................................. 23
13. 3.6 Objectives and Indicators ..................................................................................................................... 23
   3.7 Long-Term Management Direction ..................................................................................................... 24
   3.7.1 Available Harvest Area ................................................................................................................... 25
   3.7.2 Selection of Areas for Harvest ......................................................................................................... 25
   3.7.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement ........................................................................................... 26
   3.7.4 Spatial Assessment of Projected Harvest Areas .............................................................................. 26
   3.7.5 Social and Economic Assessment .................................................................................................. 27
   3.7.6 Risk Assessment .............................................................................................................................. 27
14. **4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS** .................................................................................................................. 28
15. 4.1 Introduction .......................................................................................................................................... 28
16. 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations ................................................................................................................ 28
   4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern .................................................. 28
1  8.0  FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES ................................................................. 48
# LIST OF TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FMP-1</td>
<td>Management Unit Crown Land Summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-2</td>
<td>Description of Forest Units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-3</td>
<td>Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-4</td>
<td>Silvicultural Ground Rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-5</td>
<td>Post-harvest Renewal Transition Rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-6</td>
<td>Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-7</td>
<td>Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-8</td>
<td>Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-9</td>
<td>Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group and Broad Size or Product Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-10</td>
<td>Assessment of Objective Achievement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-11</td>
<td>Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern and Conditions on Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-12</td>
<td>Planned Harvest Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-13</td>
<td>Planned Harvest Volume by Species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-14</td>
<td>Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-15</td>
<td>Projected Wood Utilization by Mill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-16</td>
<td>Contingency Harvest Area and Volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-17</td>
<td>Planned Renewal and Tending Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-18</td>
<td>Road Construction and Use Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-19</td>
<td>Planned Expenditures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMP-20</td>
<td>Planned Assessment of Establishment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-1A</td>
<td>Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-1B</td>
<td>Application of Section 18 of the Endangered Species Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-1C</td>
<td>Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-2</td>
<td>Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-3</td>
<td>Forest Management Plan Contributors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-4</td>
<td>Index to the components of the Forest Management Plan that relate to the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT

Part B of this manual describes the content requirements and is a template for writing the forest management plan (FMP). A FMP is comprised of text, tables, maps and supplementary documentation. FMPs will contain page numbers and line numbers.

During the preparation, review and approval of the FMP, the documentation requirements of Part B will apply.

Phase-in Provisions

Forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2018 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of the FMPM (2009).

Forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2019, will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of the following sections of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM):

• Part B, Section 1.0 through 3.7.6, to the extent reasonably possible; and
• Part B, Section 4.0 through 8.0.

Where the renewal of a forest management plan is rescheduled to April 1, 2020 due to a delay in its preparation, and the proposed long-term management direction for that forest management plan has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009) and has been endorsed by the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) regional director prior to April 1, 2019, the forest management plan will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of the following sections of this FMPM:

• Part B, Section 1.0 through 3.7.6, to the extent reasonably possible; and
• Part B, Section 4.0 through 8.0.

Subject to the foregoing phase-in provisions, forest management plans scheduled for renewal on or after April 1, 2020 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of this FMPM.

Planned operations for the second five-year term of plans prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009) will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of the FMPM (2009).
The Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page (Figure B-1A) will be located at the front of each draft and approved FMP. The plan author will complete, sign and seal the title, certification and approval page of the draft and final FMP. For FMPs prepared by an organization other than MNRF, the senior company official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The final FMP approval page will also be signed by the MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, and the MNRF regional director. Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the Endangered Species Act, 2007 (ESA), Figure B-1B will be included in the FMP. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMPs.

If the MNRF district manager and MNRF regional resources manager direct other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of a FMP, those people will certify the parts of the FMP that they prepared and indicate they have prepared those parts of the FMP in accordance with the FMPM. Their certification will be documented in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1C.

A list of exceptions (Figure B-2) will follow the title and certification page. The list of forest management plan contributors (Figure B-3) will follow the list of exceptions.
Figure B-1A: Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

for the

[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]

[Name of plan author’s organization]

for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby certify that I have prepared this forest management plan, including the silvicultural ground rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement with the assistance of an interdisciplinary planning team in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and Forest Information Manual.

[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

Submitted by: [name] [date]
(where applicable) [Senior official of plan author’s organization, if other than MNRF]

I recommend that this forest management plan be approved for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that the forest management plan has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this forest management plan, prescriptions and conditions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNRF District Manager] [date]

[MNRF Regional Resources Manager] [date]

Approved by:

[MNRF Regional Director] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]
Figure B-1B: Application of Section 18 of the Endangered Species Act

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

for the

[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]

[Name of plan author’s organization]

for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

The Minister (or Minister’s delegate) has formed the opinions specified in ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the Endangered Species Act, 2007 with regard to this forest management plan, which has the same effect as a permit issued under section 17 of that Act in respect of the following species:

• [list]

[name] [date]

[Minister (or Minister’s delegate)]
Figure B-1C: Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page

For Sections of the Forest Management Plan not Prepared by the Plan Author

**FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

for the

[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]

[Name of plan author's organization]

for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the forest management plan as indicated, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Job Title</th>
<th>Sections prepared</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[position]</td>
<td>[section]</td>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[date]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Job Title</th>
<th>Sections prepared</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[position]</td>
<td>[section]</td>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[date]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Job Title</th>
<th>Sections prepared</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[position]</td>
<td>[section]</td>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[date]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Job Title</th>
<th>Sections prepared</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[position]</td>
<td>[section]</td>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[date]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Job Title</th>
<th>Sections prepared</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[position]</td>
<td>[section]</td>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[date]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure B-2: Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]
[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

All silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules that are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern that are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides, are provided in this list of exceptions. The specific section of the forest management plan that provides documentation of the exception is also referenced in this list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description of Exception</th>
<th>Specific Section of Forest Management Plan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure B-3: Forest Management Plan Contributors

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author’s organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

PLANNING TEAM MEMBERS

[name]
Plan Author

[list]

PLANNING TEAM ADVISORS

[list]

LOCAL CITIZENS’ COMMITTEE MEMBERS

[list]

A brief statement which reports on the local citizens’ committee’s agreement or
disagreement with the forest management plan (final plan only):

[statement]

PLAN REVIEWERS

[list]
TABLE OF CONTENTS

The table of contents will follow the list of forest management plan contributors. The table of contents will also contain a list of tables, a list of figures, and a list of supplementary documentation.

INDEX TO ENDANGERED SPECIES ACT, SECTION 18 OVERALL BENEFIT INSTRUMENT COMPONENTS OF THE FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

The index to Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument components of the FMP (Figure B-4) will be located in the forest management plan on a separate page immediately following the Table of Contents. The index will be completed for each species at risk for which the FMP is proposed to be considered a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument. The Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument legislative and policy requirements that are to be addressed by the FMP are listed in the first column. The corresponding section(s) of the FMP where the requirement is addressed will be listed in the second column and the associated page number(s) in the third column.

The sections of the FMP listed in the second column represent examples of sections of a FMP that will address the ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit instrument related components. There may be additional sections of a FMP that planning teams may include to address the ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit instrument related components.

Figure B-4: Index to the components of the Forest Management Plan that relate to the Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument Related Components</th>
<th>Section of Forest Management Plan</th>
<th>Page Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Species</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description of the proposed activity, methodology and timeline</td>
<td>3.0 Development of the Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.0 Planned Operations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Figure B-1A Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Species at risk and/or its habitat is present at or near the proposed activity location and information used to identify these locations</td>
<td>2.1.4.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.1.4.3 Values Information</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument Related Components</td>
<td>Section of Forest Management Plan</td>
<td>Page Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| How and to what extent the species at risk and/or its habitat may be positively or adversely affected by the proposed activity | ▪ 3.0 Development of the Long-Term Management Direction  
▪ 4.0 Planned Operations  
▪ 5.0 Determination of Sustainability |  |
| Description of reasonable alternatives to/within the proposed activity including one that would not adversely affect the species and/or its habitat (avoidance alternative) | ▪ 3.0 Development of the Long-Term Management Direction  
▪ 4.0 Planned Operations  
▪ 4.3 Harvest Operations  
▪ 4.5 Roads |  |
| Description of how any Government Response Statement published with respect to the species at risk has been considered in the alternative approaches | ▪ Figure B-1A Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page  
▪ 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations |  |
| Rationale supporting identification of the best alternative | ▪ 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations |  |
| Description of steps to minimize adverse effects on the species and/or its habitat | ▪ 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations |  |
| Description of how overall benefit will be achieved for the species within a reasonable time. NOTE: Clearly and appropriately distinguish overall benefit actions from steps that are being taken to minimize adverse effects | ▪ 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations |  |
| Description of the impact monitoring plan for residual adverse effects on the species and/or its habitat, as required | ▪ 4.7 Monitoring and Assessment |  |
## ESA, Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument Related Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description of the effectiveness monitoring plan for overall benefit actions, as required</th>
<th>Section of Forest Management Plan</th>
<th>Page Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• 4.7 Monitoring and Assessment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.0 INTRODUCTION

The introduction will describe the purpose of the FMP and set the context for the FMP locally, regionally and provincially.

The FMP text will describe the management responsibilities for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.1.1). The FMP text will include responsibilities of MNRF, the sustainable forest licensee, and other forest companies that operate on the management unit, and any management implications of these responsibilities and arrangements.

The date that the present management unit boundaries were established and a description of any boundary changes since the last FMP was prepared will be documented.

The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the planning team terms of reference.

The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains a brief description of how MNRF’s Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the FMP in the form of the SEV consideration document.
2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION

2.1 Forest Description

2.1.1 Historic Forest Condition

The summary of the historic forest condition will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the summary of the historic forest condition.

2.1.2 Current Forest Condition

The FMP text will describe the Crown forest and patent land Crown timber, as described in the planning inventory, and discuss the implications of patent land Crown timber and land type (e.g., large areas of non-productive forest within the management unit) on the development of the FMP. A summary of the land types for the management unit will be provided in FMP-1 that summarizes the status of the Crown forest and patent land Crown timber at the beginning of the period of the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.2). The FMP text will reference FMP-1. The FMP text will also discuss the implications of patent land within the management unit on the development of the FMP. The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the analysis package that documents the development of the planning inventory products and the manner in which forest description information is updated, projected, or forecasted.

2.1.3 Forest Classification

2.1.3.1 Forest Units and Analysis Units

The FMP text will describe the forest units used in the FMP and how they align with the regional standard forest units (Part A, Section 1.2.2.1). The forest units for the management unit will be identified in FMP-2. The FMP text will reference FMP-2. The FMP text will also describe how the forest units provide the ability to assess the requirements of the forest management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale. If applicable, the FMP text will describe how analysis units were used. The FMP text will reference the analysis package.

A summary of the managed Crown productive forest land area of the management unit by forest unit and age class will be provided in FMP-3. The production forest area that is available for timber production, and the production forest area that is, or is expected to be, unavailable will be identified separately. The FMP text will contain the reasons that production forest area is unavailable for timber production. The FMP text will describe the
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

management implications of the plan start area by forest unit and age class, on the development of the FMP.

2.1.3.2 Forest Landscape Classes

The FMP text will describe the forest landscape classes and the plan start forest composition, structure and pattern (e.g., figures and/or graphs) at the landscape level (Part A, Section 1.2.2.3). The forest landscape pattern will be portrayed. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map). The FMP text will describe the management implications of the plan start forest landscape pattern on the development of the FMP.

2.1.3.3 Other Forest Classifications

The FMP text will describe the other forest classifications (e.g., habitat for wildlife species) used in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.2.4). The FMP text will also describe any management implications concerning the other forest classifications on the development of the FMP.

Where applicable, a summary of the habitat for selected species on the management unit will be provided in FMP-7. The FMP text will reference FMP-7.

Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of selected species will be included. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map).

The FMP text will describe the management implications of the plan start habitat on the development of the FMP.

2.1.4 Forest Resources

2.1.4.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk

Species at risk on the management unit will be identified. If applicable, the FMP text will describe classifications used to identify habitat for forest-related species at risk. The contribution and importance of the management unit in supporting these classified forest dependent species of flora, fish and wildlife will be described. Where other resource management plans (e.g., recovery strategies and management plans for species at risk) or inventories for these species provide information on the extent and quality of the habitat, and population status, relevant to the management unit, the information will be described. The degree to which the quality or quantity of habitat for species at risk could be affected by forest management operations will be discussed.
Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of forest-related species at risk will be included. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map).

The FMP text will describe the implications of species at risk species on the development of the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.8.7).

2.1.4.2 Fish and Wildlife Inventories

The FMP text will describe the other (not species at risk or selected species) fish and wildlife resources on the management unit, including a summary of available information on the occurrence of fish and wildlife species based on fish and wildlife inventory and habitat information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.6). The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources could be affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

The FMP text will describe the implications of the fish and wildlife resources on the development of the FMP.

2.1.4.3 Values Information

The FMP text will identify and briefly describe the values information portrayed on the values maps (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and how it was used in the preparation of the FMP. The text will include a list of sources of the information on the values map(s) or otherwise available in the values database and identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing.

The FMP text will also describe the management implications of values on the development of the FMP. The values maps will be included in the FMP. The text will describe how the information is organized on the values maps (e.g., one map, series of maps).

For resource-based tourism values and old growth red and white pine forest communities, the FMP text will provide a brief description of the information portrayed on the values maps. Not all old growth red and white pine forest communities will be managed for old growth values. An explanation of the reasons why any such community will not be managed for old growth values will be provided in the text of the FMP.

The FMP text will describe the land uses on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.8) and their implications on the FMP. The land uses include:

(a) resource-based tourism areas;
(b) mineral, aggregate and quarry areas;
(c) Crown land recreation and cottaging;
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

(d) trapping (commercial fur); and
(e) private land.

The FMP text will describe the provincial parks and conservation reserves, national parks and forest reserves within the boundary of the management unit that contribute to the achievement of management objectives. This description will include a list of national and provincial parks, conservation reserves, forest reserves, and the management emphasis for each protected area and the class of provincial park. In addition, the FMP text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within or in the vicinity of these areas.

The FMP text will also describe any other land use policy areas that are documented in the Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, such as enhanced management areas, that may have implications for forest management activities on the management unit. The FMP text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within these areas.

The FMP text will describe other uncommon or notable natural resource features (e.g., significant old growth stands, large wetland complexes) that occur on the management unit. The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources have been, or could be, affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

The FMP text will describe the access condition on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10). For example, the text will describe areas that are currently accessed, roadless areas and areas where land use decisions have restricted access. The FMP text will describe the implications of the plan start access condition on the development of the FMP.

The FMP text will include a statement confirming the commitment of part of the FMP to maintain the viability of the tourism industry by protecting tourism values in the forest management planning process through the application of MNRF’s approved forest management guide(s) that addresses forestry and resource-based tourism and the use of RSA’s as one method of protecting and sustaining these values.

2.2 Social and Economic Description

2.2.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context

The FMP text will list communities that derive substantial social and economic benefits (e.g., employment, municipal taxes) related to forest management activities, and First Nation and Métis communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities.
2.2.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles

The standardized demographic profiles for those communities identified in Part B, Section 2.2.1 will be summarized in the text. The summary will include:

(a) population trends for each community;
(b) community diversity for each community;
(c) household income for each community; and
(d) employment by industry for each community.

The summary will describe the importance of the forest to individual communities. The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete profiles.

2.2.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest

The FMP text will include a summary of the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest organized by sector. The sectors include:

(a) forestry;
(b) recreation and tourism;
(c) mining, aggregate and hydro generation; and
(d) any others.

The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete description of industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest.

2.3 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report

If agreed to by the First Nation or Métis community, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will be included in the FMP as follows. The FMP text will summarize the use of the lands, and natural resources on the management unit by First Nation and Métis communities and forest management-related opportunities, concerns, and issues for those communities. The First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete report.
3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION

3.1 Introduction

The FMP text will outline the components of the long-term management direction (LTMD).

Additional documentation requirements associated with the LTMD for Far North management units that are added to the area of the undertaking (AOU) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

3.2 Management Considerations

The FMP text will describe the management considerations and how these considerations affected the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.3).

The FMP text will summarize the information used to identify the management considerations, the sources of the information and how the information was used to confirm or change past management direction. The modified fire response areas, if any, will be identified and portrayed.

3.3 Base Model

The FMP text will identify that the assumptions used to develop the base model inventory and base model related to the land base (e.g., ecological zones, land use decisions), forest dynamics (forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team are included in the analysis package. The FMP text will reference the section of the analysis package that provides the details of the development of the base model inventory and the base model.

3.3.1 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities

The FMP text will describe how the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the development of the growth and yield projections (Part A, Section 1.2.4.1), and silvicultural options (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5).

3.3.2 Analysis of Past Silvicultural Performance

The FMP text will describe the analysis of past silvicultural performance conducted by a registered professional forester and how the results of the analysis influenced the
development of the post-harvest renewal transition rules (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The post-
harvest renewal transition rules will be documented in (FMP-5). The FMP text will reference
FMP-5.

The FMP text will document any post-harvest renewal transition rules that are not consistent
with the results of the analysis of past silvicultural performance. The rationale for
adjustments to the default post-harvest renewal transition rules will be also be documented.
If applicable, the FMP text will describe the monitoring program to be used to verify the
assumptions used to rationalize the adjustments and will include:

(a) methodologies;
(b) timing and duration; and
(c) documentation and reporting.

3.4 Desired Forest and Benefits

The FMP text will describe the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting. The FMP
text will include a discussion of how the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting
(Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) influenced the development of objectives, indicators and desired
levels for the management unit. The summary of public consultation will summarize
participation in the desired forest and benefits meeting.

3.5 Strategic Management Zones

The FMP text will describe the following for management zones (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1):

(a) the intent of the management zones; and
(b) how the management zone was incorporated into the development of
objectives and indicators.

Management zones will be portrayed.

3.6 Objectives and Indicators

The FMP text will describe the management objectives, indicators and the time when each
indicator is to be assessed. The FMP text will document the desirable levels and targets for
each indicator. The management objectives, indicators desirable levels and targets, and the
timing of assessment are summarized in FMP-10. The FMP text will reference FMP-10.
Where objectives relating to the management of forest cover have been established in other
plans or policies, the specific plan or policy which is the source of those existing objectives
will be stated in the text and the geographic area(s) that applies to those objectives will be identified.

The FMP text will also document how desirable levels and targets were established, in consideration of background information, including direction in relevant forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.3), the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting, and the results of scoping analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1). The FMP text will reference the section of the analysis package with the inputs, results and conclusions for the development of management objectives and scoping investigations.

3.7 Long-Term Management Direction

The FMP text will describe the strategic modelling (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) conducted to determine the location, types, and levels of activities (i.e., access, harvest, renewal and tending) required to manage forest cover to balance the achievement of management objectives. The FMP text will contain a description of the criteria used for the identification of areas eligible for harvest (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1). The locations, types, and levels of activities required to manage forest cover in balancing the achievement of management objectives investigated during the development of the LTMD will be described. The FMP text will reference the section of the analysis package that provides the details of the development of the LTMD.

The FMP text will contain a description of the projected forest condition from the strategic modelling. The applicable 100-year projections for quantifiable objectives will be documented in the FMP. The projections in the FMP include:

(a) forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-6);
(b) habitat for selected wildlife species (FMP-7);
(c) available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-8); and
(d) available harvest volume by species group, and broad size or product group (FMP-9).

The FMP text will describe the change in forest condition from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change in area of each forest unit (FMP-6). The projected area of each forest unit (FMP-6) will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference FMP-6.

The FMP text will describe the change in habitat for selected wildlife species from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change (FMP-7). The projected area of habitat for selected wildlife species (FMP-7) will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference FMP-7.
The FMP text will describe the change in available harvest volume by species group, and broad size or product group from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change (FMP-9). The FMP text will reference FMP-9. The projected level of available harvest volume (FMP-9) will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The volume graph will also present:

- projections from the previous FMPs;
- historic wood utilization; and
- Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified in the Provinical Wood Supply Strategy.

The outputs of forest modelling will be submitted with the FMP in digital form. The decisions made in the development of the strategic model will be documented in the analysis package. The text will reference the sections of the analysis package that contain the decisions made.

The requirements for the information in the analysis package are described in Appendix I.

3.7.1 Available Harvest Area

The FMP text will describe the projected levels of available harvest area for each forest unit (FMP-8), and the spatial distribution of harvest over the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years). The FMP text will discuss any associated management implications (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will also describe the trends in available harvest area from previous FMP, the current plan, and projected available harvest area (FMP-8), and the implications of the projected change. The FMP text will reference FMP-8. The projected level of available harvest area (FMP-8) will be portrayed graphically in the FMP.

The spatial distribution over the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years) will be portrayed.

3.7.2 Selection of Areas for Harvest

The FMP text will contain a description of the criteria used for the selection of areas for harvest, for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). Areas selected for harvest for the 10-year period will not exceed the available harvest area by forest unit. The text will document how the criteria reflect upon the strategic modelling, and discuss the relative importance of each criterion and its role in selecting the areas for harvest.

If planned harvest areas do not closely match projections of forest operations in the LTMD, in terms of management zone, age class and/or stage of management, the rationale will be documented in the FMP text.
The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period and the optional harvest areas will be identified.

The FMP text will include a discussion describing how MNRF’s forest management guide(s) were considered during the selection of areas for harvest operations. The text will describe how the areas selected for harvest contribute to the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern. Rationale for harvest areas selected for the 10-year period that do not contribute to the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern will be provided.

The FMP text will describe any factors that limited the selection of areas for harvest, such as unresolved issues over forest resource use, habitat for species at risk, and the effects of these limitations on the achievement of forest management objectives.

The text will document input from the public and First Nation and Métis communities that influenced the selection of areas for harvest.

3.7.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement

For all management objectives (i.e., spatial and nonspatial) and indicators scheduled for assessment during the preparation and approval of the FMP (FMP-10), the FMP text will document the results of the assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The levels of objective achievement and their relationship to desirable levels and targets, including any differences, will also be documented. If the level of objective achievement is outside the desirable level for an objective, rationale will be provided. The results of analysis to investigate the balancing of objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) will be described in the text. A summary of the projected objective achievement, desirable levels and targets in the LTMD will be recorded in FMP-10. The FMP text will reference FMP-10.

The FMP text will describe how objectives and indicators to be assessed during FMP implementation will be assessed. The FMP text will also describe how scheduled forest management activities related to these objectives and indicators will contribute to overall objective achievement.

3.7.4 Spatial Assessment of Projected Harvest Areas

The FMP text will document the methods and criteria used to assess the feasibility of the spatial distribution of the harvest and the economic feasibility of the harvest (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will describe how the distribution of harvest areas over the first four FMP periods provides for a spatially and economically feasible harvest. The text will discuss any implications of the spatial distribution of harvest areas on the FMP being prepared and future FMP.
3.7.5 Social and Economic Assessment

The FMP text will document the methodology used to assess the social and economic impacts of implementing the LTMD. The FMP text will describe the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will also describe how the quantity of harvest volume supplied to the wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the communities identified in the social and economic description (Part B, Section 2.2).

3.7.6 Risk Assessment

The FMP text will describe the risks assessed in the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will also document the potential implications on the achievement of management objectives (e.g., wildlife habitat, available volume), as determined through the risk assessment investigation(s).
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS

4.1 Introduction

The FMP text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section. The text will describe the areas planned for operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.3).

Additional documentation requirements for Far North management units that are added to the AOU concerning the planned operations are described in Part F of this FMPM.

4.2 Prescriptions for Operations

4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern

The operational prescriptions and conditions for all areas of concern that were developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3, will be documented in FMP-11. The FMP text will reference FMP-11 and describe the contents of the table.

For areas of concern prescriptions and conditions that required the completion of supplementary documentation, the text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the additional information, including comments from the public and First Nation and Métis communities. Any objections to an operational prescription or condition for an area of concern as a result of public or First Nation or Métis community comments will be recorded in the supplementary documentation. The responses to those objections will also be documented on the supplementary documentation. The format for the supplementary documentation is prescribed in Appendix IV.

Any operational prescription or condition for an area of concern that differs from the specific direction or recommendation (standards or guidelines) in a forest management guide will be identified in FMP-11 as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section 4.7.2) will describe the methods that will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the operational prescription or condition. The exception monitoring program will also be identified in the supplementary documentation (Appendix IV). The list of exceptions will be referenced in the MNRF district manager’s and MNRF regional resources manager’s certification and recommendation of the FMP for approval (Figure B-2).

Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA reasonable alternatives, including alternatives that would not adversely affect the species, will be considered and will be documented in the text.
4.2.1.1 Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern Information Products

The information product associated with operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will identify:

(a) the area of concern identifier; and
(b) the area of concern type.

For candidate bridging areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern from the current approved FMP may be used, and will be documented in FMP-11, and identified in the information product. If desired, operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern from the new FMP may be used for candidate bridging areas and second-pass harvest areas and will be documented in FMP-11, and identified in the information product.

4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

4.2.2.1 Silvicultural Ground Rules

Silvicultural ground rules (SGRs) that were developed for the applicable forest units - ecosite combinations on the management unit are documented in FMP-4 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2).

The FMP text will contain a statement that the prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending presented in FMP-4 will serve as the prescriptions for operations, including naturally depleted areas that are salvaged, for the 10-year period of the FMP.

The FMP text will include a discussion of how the SGRs reflect the silvicultural options in the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The FMP text will also include a discussion of how the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the development of the SGRs.

The FMP text will describe the SGRs that will most commonly be used to regenerate each silvicultural stratum. The FMP text will state that the most common treatment package(s) in each SGR will be the most likely treatment. The FMP text will also contain a statement that this information represents the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of FMP preparation, and will not limit the selection of any acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments in the SGRs at the time of implementation of operations.

If a treatment that is not recommended in the applicable silvicultural guide(s) is included in a SGR, that treatment will be recorded as an exception in FMP-4. The rationale for that exception will be provided. The FMP text will reference the monitoring program that describes the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment (Part B, Section 4.7.2).
If a silvicultural trial area is planned for implementation, the trial areas will be planned and implemented using the approved silvicultural guide(s). The rationale for the trial will be included in the FMP text and will identify the SGR to be used. The SGR for the trial area will be documented in FMP-4.

The FMP text will state that the information products for harvest, renewal and tending operations will serve as the stand list.

The FMP text will describe situations where prescribed burns and aerial applications of herbicide may occur.

4.2.2.2 Conditions on Regular Operations

Where a condition on regular operations has been developed through application of MNRF’s forest management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales or relating to species at risk, these conditions will be documented in the FMP. Where conditions on regular operations apply to a specific management zone, the text will identify the management zone and where it is portrayed.

Any conditions on regular operations for an important ecological feature that differ from the specific direction or recommendation (standards or guidelines) in a forest management guide will be identified in the FMP as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section 4.7.2) will describe the methods that will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the condition on regular operations. The list of exceptions will be referenced in the MNRF district manager’s and MNRF regional resources manager’s certification and recommendation of the FMP for approval (Figure B-2).

Where a FMP is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA reasonable alternatives, including alternatives that would not adversely affect the species, will be considered and will be documented in the text.

4.3 Harvest Operations

4.3.1 Harvest Areas

The areas planned for harvest operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.3.1) are described in Part B, Section 3.7.2. The 10-year area is the planned harvest area. The available harvest area and the planned harvest area for the 10-year period will be described in the text and recorded in FMP-12. The FMP text will reference FMP-12. The text will discuss how the applicable MNRF guide(s) (e.g., guide that addresses the conservation of biodiversity at the stand and site scales) were considered in the planning of harvest operations.
If applicable, the FMP text will describe the distribution of the planned harvest area by licensee and record it in FMP-14. The FMP text will reference FMP-14. The FMP text will include a statement that the approval of the forest management plan does not represent an agreement to make harvest areas available to a particular licensee.

For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silvicultural system, the required area of stand level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in MNRF’s applicable forest management guide(s). The required area of stand-level residual will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide(s). Rationale will be provided in the text of the FMP for those instances when harvest areas do not follow the residual stand structure requirements of the applicable forest management guide(s).

For harvest related silvicultural trial areas the FMP text will describe:

(a) the eligibility of treatment(s);
(b) the eligibility forest type(s); and
(c) any additional limitations (e.g., size, location, number).

If area is identified for harvest as a result of an insect pest management strategy (Part D, Section 6.0), the area planned for harvest will be documented in the FMP text. The FMP text will discuss the effect on achievement of management objectives.

The FMP text will include a statement that locations where fuelwood can be obtained will be identified in each annual work schedule (Part D, Section 3.3.1).

4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

The requirements for the planning of bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.3.4. The FMP text will contain a description of the area of bridging operations, by forest unit. The text will also include an acknowledgement that the bridging operations are limited to three months of harvest area, and harvest of bridging area must be completed by March 31, of the first year of the FMP.

The FMP text will contain a description of any second-pass harvest areas, including an estimate of the area and volume associated with those areas. Any restrictions on the timing and extent of these operations will be documented in the text.

4.3.5 Harvest Volume

The available harvest volume, and an estimate of the planned harvest volume, for the 10-year period, will be recorded in FMP-13. Volumes will be summarized by net merchantable
volume, and undersized and defect volume. The method used to estimate the volume for
the planned harvest area will be described in the FMP text. If there are any substantial
differences between the available harvest volume and the planned harvest volume, by
conifer and hardwood subtotals, an explanation will be provided in the text.

4.3.6 Wood Utilization

The text will include a discussion of the anticipated wood utilization of the planned harvest
volume for the 10-year period. The planned harvest volume will be recorded by utilization,
volume type (i.e., net merchantable, and undersized and defect), product and species in
FMP-14. Upon request by an overlapping licensee and agreement of the planning team, the
harvest volumes will also be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees. Any volumes
that are in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements for the management unit
will be identified as unutilized harvest volume. The text will also include a discussion of the
sources of, and reasons for, unutilized volumes. Anticipated effects on the achievement of
management objectives and progress toward the desired forest condition, if the projected
unutilized volumes are not utilized, will be documented in the text. The plan text will contain
a statement that projected unutilized harvest volumes remain available for utilization to
support industrial proposals. The FMP text will reference FMP-14.

The planned harvest volume for each mill projected to receive wood supply from the
management unit will be recorded, by volume type, product, and species in FMP-15.

The FMP text will describe the industrial wood requirements for the 10-year period. The
FMP text will include a discussion of whether or not the MNRF wood supply commitment
levels were achieved and the implications (e.g., objective achievement) if they are not
achieved. The FMP text will reference FMP-15. If volume is projected to be utilized but it is
not possible to forcast a specific mill, the FMP text will include a discussion of the potential
markets.

The FMP text will include a statement that the approval of the FMP is not an agreement to
make areas available for harvest to a particular licensee, or an agreement to make planned
harvest volume available to a particular mill.

4.3.7 Salvage

The requirements for the planning of salvage harvest areas are described in Part A, Section
1.3.3.1. The FMP text will document the total area and volume associated with areas of
salvage harvest operations. The salvage harvest area and volume will be recorded for each
licensee or group of licensees in tables similar to FMP-14. Areas of salvage harvest will be
included in the harvest area information products. The FMP text will reference FMP-14.
4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume

The requirements for the planning of contingency area for harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.2. The FMP text will briefly describe the purpose and function of contingency area for harvest operations and how these areas were identified. The contingency area and an estimate of the volume will be recorded in FMP-16. The FMP text will reference FMP-16.

The contingency area will be included in the harvest area information products.

4.3.9 Harvest Area Information Products

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will identify:

(a) the harvest block identifier;
(b) the silvicultural system;
(c) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, contingency, surplus, redirected and accelerated);
(d) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(e) the SGR; and
(f) if applicable, stand level residual requirements.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will portray:

(a) the harvest block identifier;
(b) the silvicultural system;
(c) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, contingency, surplus, redirected and accelerated);
(d) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(e) the SGR; and
(f) if applicable, the stand level residual requirements.

4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations

4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas

The requirements for the planning of renewal and tending areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.3. The planned levels of renewal and tending operations associated with harvest and natural disturbance will be summarized by treatment in FMP-17. The FMP text will reference FMP-17.
The FMP text will include a discussion of how the analysis of silvicultural activities (Part E, Section 3.3) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the planned types and levels of renewal and tending operations. The FMP text will also describe the planned levels of renewal and tending operations and associated expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the FMP. The FMP text will describe supplemental treatments or retreatments, if applicable.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection will be submitted with the AWS (Part D, Section 3.3.2).

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two passes. The FMP text will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will achieve the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD.

For renewal and tending related silvicultural trial areas the FMP text will describe:

(a) the eligibility of treatment(s);
(b) the eligibility forest type(s); and
(c) any additional limitations (e.g., size, location, number).

4.4.2 Renewal Support

The sustainable forest licensee’s program for the collection of seed and the production of nursery stock, during the 10-year period will be described in the FMP text. A forecast of the volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted (by species), for the 10-year period will also be documented in the FMP text.

Tree improvement activities scheduled during the 10-year period to support the production of improved seed will be described in the FMP text, with reference to existing seed orchards and tree improvement strategies. The locations of tree improvement activities will be portrayed.

Information products associated with tree improvement activities will identify:

(a) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern; and
(b) the tree improvement activity.

Information products associated with tree improvement activities portray:

(a) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern; and
(b) the tree improvement activity.
4.5  Roads

4.5.1  Primary and Branch Roads

A summary of primary and branch road construction will be documented in the FMP text. Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new primary road corridor, the rationale for the selected corridor and associated use management strategy, and the rationale for each new branch road corridor and associated use management strategy, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP (Appendix III). The FMP text will reference the supplemental documentation (Appendix III).

If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

The FMP text will identify primary and branch roads that will have access restriction and/or road transfer implemented during the 10-year period. If a use management strategy restricts public access, the FMP text will reference the supplementary documentation that contains the rationale for the restriction (Appendix III).

Each planned new primary and branch road and the use management strategy for the road will be recorded in FMP-18. The length of road to be constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP will also be recorded in FMP-18. The FMP text will reference FMP-18.

Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, any conditions on the primary road, branch road or landing as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

4.5.2  Operational Roads

A summary of operational road construction will be documented in the FMP text. The FMP text will contain a statement that operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often decommissioned. Each operational road boundary, within which an operational road will be constructed, and the associated use management strategy for the road(s) will be recorded in FMP-18. The FMP text will reference FMP-18. Documentation of the use management strategy for each operational road or networks of operational roads will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP (Appendix III). If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will also be provided in the supplementary documentation (Appendix III). The FMP text will reference the appropriate sections of the supplementary documentation of the FMP.
If a new operational road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, any conditions on the operational road or landing, as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

4.5.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads

The FMP text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. For each crossing of an area of concern within a primary or branch road corridor, the conditions on construction of the road will be documented in FMP-11 and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-11. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a primary or branch road, the receipt of comments will be noted in FMP-11 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix IV, Part D). The FMP text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan that contains the documentation.

The FMP text will include a statement that for each new primary or branch road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.5) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

4.5.4 Area of Concern Crossings - Operational Roads

The FMP text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. For operational road crossings of areas of concern, the conditions on construction of the crossing(s) for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern, will be documented in FMP-11 and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-11. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of public comments will be noted in FMP-11 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix IV, Part C). The FMP text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the FMP that contains the documentation.

The FMP text will include a statement that for each new operational road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.5) in accordance with
the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for
the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

4.5.5 Existing Roads

Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest
licensee as described in Part A\(^1\), Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used
for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF\(^2\),
will be documented in FMP-18. The associated use management strategy for each existing
road or road network will also be documented in FMP-18. Documentation of new or revised
use management strategies, and the rationale, will be included in the supplementary
documentation of the FMP (Appendix III).

Where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated intent to transfer responsibility for an
existing road during the next 20 years (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7), a preliminary indication of
the management intent for the road or road network will be documented in FMP-18. If the
sustainable forest licensee plans to transfer the responsibility for a road during this 10-year
period, the actions required prior to transfer, including potential removal of water crossings,
will be documented in FMP-18.

The FMP text will reference the information on existing road use management strategies
including the transfer of road responsibility and decommissioning in FMP-18.

Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes
during the period of the FMP, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern for
a value, the appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNRF’s
guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be
documented in FMP-11, and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes
during the period of the FMP, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area
of concern for a value, conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNRF’s

\(^1\) This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.43 (PLA), for
which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

\(^2\) Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of “road”
under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal
highways as described under the Municipal Act, 2001, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the Public
Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50
guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

4.5.5.1 Road Information Products

For each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee as described in Part A, Section 1.1.8.10, and other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF, information products associated with road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will identify:

(a) the corridors for primary roads (20 years);
(b) the corridors for primary and branch roads planned for construction (10 years);
(c) the operational road boundaries (10 years);
(d) the areas of concern within the corridors for primary and branch roads, operational road boundaries, and the areas of concern that intersect existing roads;
(e) the roads that will be maintained;
(f) the roads and associated water crossings that will be monitored;
(g) the segments of roads that currently have access controls and the segments of roads where new access controls are scheduled, and the type of access control activities; and
(h) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned, and the type of decommissioning activities.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will portray:

(a) the corridors for primary roads (20 years)
(b) the corridors for primary and branch roads (10 years);
(c) the operational road boundaries (10 years);
(d) the areas of concern within the corridors for primary and branch roads, operational road boundaries, and the areas of concern that intersect existing roads;

This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

Roads under the jurisdiction and control of MNRF are those roads that fall within the definition of “road” under s.48 of the PLA. MNRF does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the Municipal Act, 2001, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50.
the segments of roads that currently have access controls and the segments of roads where new access controls are scheduled; and
the segments of roads that will be decommissioned.

4.5.6 Road Water Crossings

The water crossing standards to be implemented, as described in the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings, will be documented in the FMP.

4.5.7 Forestry Aggregate Pits

The FMP text will include a statement that the criteria for a forestry aggregate pit apply as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this FMPM.

The operational standards for the extraction of aggregate resources for forestry aggregate pits, as described in Appendix V, will be documented in the FMP.

Aggregate extraction areas will be identified in the FMP as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this FMPM.

Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits

The appropriate conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits, as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

If a forestry aggregate pit intersects an area of concern, the appropriate conditions on operations, as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in FMP-11 and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps.

If an existing forestry aggregate pit is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the forestry aggregate pit does not intersect an area of concern, any conditions on the forestry aggregate pit as described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

All existing forestry aggregate pits will be identified in each annual work schedule (Part D, Section 3.3.4).
4.5.7.1 Aggregate Extraction Areas Information Products

Information products associated with aggregate extraction areas will identify:

(a) the aggregate extraction area identifier; and

(b) the areas of concern.

Information products associated with aggregate extraction areas will portray:

(a) the aggregate extraction area identifier; and

(b) the areas of concern.

4.6 Expenditures

The FMP text will identify the projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, and renewal support, and discuss the associated implications (Part A, Section 1.3.7). Rationale will be provided for the assumptions and ratios used to calculate expenditures associated with the implementation of renewal and tending operations.

The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in FMP-19. The FMP text will reference FMP-19.

4.7 Monitoring and Assessment

4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

The sustainable forest licensee’s 10-year compliance strategy will be developed in accordance with the requirements of MNRF’s Forest Compliance Handbook. The handbook describes the forest operations inspection process, the requirement for the sustainable forest licensee to produce inspection reports, and the processes for managing operational issues that may be identified through compliance inspections. The 10-year compliance strategy will describe the methods, intensity and frequency of forest operations inspections, particular circumstances for which the sustainable forest licensee will conduct forest operations inspections (e.g., forest operations in, and adjacent to, areas of concern), and the submission of inspection reports to MNRF. The 10-year compliance strategy will be included in the FMP text.

The FMP text will describe the MNRF district program for auditing forest operations and conducting forest operations inspections. The FMP text will also describe how compliance performance on the forest will be communicated to the local citizens’ committee (LCC) for their review.
4.7.2 Exceptions

The FMP text will summarize the exceptions monitoring programs to be conducted on the management unit. The full monitoring program that will be conducted will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP and referenced in the FMP text.

The monitoring programs for exceptions will include:

(a) methodologies;
(b) timing and duration;
(c) documentation and reporting; and
(d) the opportunities for LCC participation.

4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration

The FMP text will summarize the monitoring program to assess regeneration for naturally and artificially regenerated areas, including the information required to assess areas managed under the selection silvicultural system. The monitoring program will assess establishment and performance of regeneration for harvested areas including salvage.

The monitoring program will assess the success of silvicultural activities in the achievement of regeneration standards contained in the SGRs. The Forest Operations and Silvicultural Manual provides direction regarding the standards for observation to assess regeneration.

A summary of the area planned to be assessed for establishment will be provided in FMP-20. The FMP text will include a discussion of the area anticipated to be assessed during the 10-year period. The FMP text will reference FMP-20.

The full monitoring program will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP, and referenced in the FMP text.

The monitoring program for establishment will identify the following:

(a) assessment methodologies;
(b) validation methodologies;
(c) timing for assessments;
(d) timing for validation;
(e) documentation, including the process to address areas not successfully established, and reporting; and
(f) the opportunities for LCC participation.
The monitoring program for performance will identify the following:

(a) assessment methodologies;
(b) timing for assessments;
(c) documentation and reporting; and
(d) the opportunities for LCC participation.

4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings

A description of the monitoring program for roads and water crossings to be carried out during the 10-year period will be provided in the FMP text. The description will include the methods to be used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings to determine if there are environmental or public safety concerns. The planned monitoring for each road or road network will be recorded in FMP-18.

4.7.5 Species at Risk

If applicable, the FMP text will summarize the monitoring program developed for a species at risk. The monitoring program will include impact and effectiveness monitoring of the prescriptions, conditions, or overall benefit actions applicable to the species. The full monitoring program that will be conducted will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP and referenced in the FMP text.

The monitoring program will include:

(a) methodologies;
(b) timing and duration;
(c) documentation and reporting; and
(d) the opportunities for LCC participation.

4.8 Fire Prevention and Preparedness

The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures to be implemented during the 10-year period of the FMP will be described in the text, and will apply to the entire management unit. These measures will address how the sustainable forest licensee will prevent the start of wildfires, and how forest workers will be prepared to take immediate action to suppress small fires. These measures will include any business practices and guidelines for modifying industrial operations developed for fire prevention, preparedness, and suppression purposes. The MNRF guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in the planning of fire prevention and preparedness.
The text of the section will include:

(a) a description of how sustainable forest licensees will promote fire prevention (e.g., communication, equipment standards and inspections, monitoring compliance with the *Forest Fires Prevention Act*), including a description of how fire prevention efforts will increase during periods of high fire danger;

(b) a description of how forest workers will be made aware of fire prevention plans and initiatives; and

(c) a description of how forest workers will be trained to take part in fire suppression, to be considered “trained and capable”.

4.9 **Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction**

The FMP text will document the assessment of the expected effect of planned types and levels of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the spatial distribution of harvest areas on the progress towards meeting the objectives in the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.3.9). The assessment will:

(a) compare the planned harvest, renewal and tending operations to the projections in the LTMD;

(b) compare the distribution of harvest to the projections in the LTMD;

(c) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the planned harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;

(d) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest volume of the planned harvest area, on the achievement of the LTMD; and

(e) examine the effect of the amount of projected unutilized harvest volume on the achievement of the LTMD.

If planned types, levels and spatial distribution of operations deviate from the projections in the LTMD, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be provided.
5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY

The FMP text will contain a conclusion on forest sustainability and include documentation as to how the FMP has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (Part A, Section 1.3.10). The conclusion will be based on the assessment of objective achievement, the spatial assessments, the social and economic assessment, the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2), prescriptions and conditions for the protection of values, and conditions on regular operations for the protection of important ecological features.

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

(a) describe how the FMP provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit and discuss:
   (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which targets and/or desirable levels are not achieved;
   (ii) the spatial assessments;
   (iii) the social and economic assessment; and
   (iv) the risk assessment.

(b) provide a conclusion that the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.
6.0 DOCUMENTATION

The FMP will include supplementary documentation, which is a summary of information used, and the documentation of decisions and analyses made during the planning process. In addition, it will include documentation of information which, because of its sensitive nature, will not be included in the FMP.

Additional supplementary documentation requirements for Far North management units that are added to the AOU are described in Part F of this FMPM.

6.1 Supplementary Documentation

The supplementary documentation of the FMP includes:

(a) The summary of the historic forest condition (Part A, Section 1.1.8.12);
(b) the analysis package that describes the inputs and assumptions used, and the results and conclusions of analysis conducted, during the development of the LTMD (Part A, Section 1.1.7);
(c) the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s) (if First Nation and Métis communities agree) (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
(d) the updated summary of First Nation and Métis involvement (if First Nation and Métis communities agree) (Part A, Section 3.6.4);
(e) the social and economic description and demographic profiles (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11);
(f) the monitoring programs for exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2);
(g) the monitoring programs for species at risk (Part B, Section 4.7.5);
(h) the monitoring program for success of silvicultural activities (Part B, Section 4.7.3)
(i) documentation of the planning of primary and branch road corridors (Part A, Sections 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.2), and the locations of primary and branch roads in areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.6.3);
(j) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1) on operational roads (Part A, Section 1.3.6.4);
(k) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of the plan (in the event of a request for an individual environmental assessment, this documentation will form part of the record provided by MNRF to the Ministry of the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC)) that includes:
   i a summary of all comments received and the consideration of those comments;
   ii a summary of issue resolution (e.g., type of issue, stage initiated, resolution); and
a summary of each stage of consultation including the desired forest and benefits meeting (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types of supplemental notices sent);

- a report prepared by the LCC concerning its activities during plan preparation; the problems and issues addressed by the committee; an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee structure; and recommendations for change, if any (Part A, Section 2.2.6);

- the final list of required alterations (Part A, Sections 1.5.2) and a list of major changes from the draft to final FMP;

- the planning team’s terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1); and

- Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0).

The draft FMP will include the supplementary documentation available at the time of draft plan submission. The approved FMP will include all of the supplementary documentation.

### 6.2 Other Documentation

The public correspondence related to the development of the FMP will be retained on file at the appropriate MNRF office. The Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be retained at a location as agreed to in consultation with the First Nation and Métis communities.
PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY

A FMP summary will be prepared to facilitate public review of the draft FMP and public inspection of the approved FMP. The summary will be available at the prescribed locations (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.4 and 2.3.3.5) for the duration of the public consultation periods. A French language version of the summary will be prepared. The LCC may provide advice in the preparation of the FMP summary.

The FMP summary will include the following items, and will provide references to the appropriate sections of the FMP for each item:

(a) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of MNRF and/or an organization other than MNRF, such as a forest company);
(b) the names of the MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, plan author, and LCC contact;
(c) a summary of the report prepared by the LCC concerning its activities during plan preparation and a statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the plan (NOTE: The committee will normally prepare this summary and statement.);
(d) a summary of the objectives and indicators;
(e) a summary of road construction, harvest (area and volume), and renewal activities;
(f) a summary map of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the locations of new primary and branch roads, for the 10-year period of the FMP;
(g) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed in the FMP;
(h) whether the FMP has been designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument, under the ESA, in respect of a species at risk;
(i) for the draft FMP summary, a statement that there is an opportunity during the 60 day review period of the draft FMP to seek resolution of issues with the MNRF district manager or during the 30 days following the completion of the 60 day review period with the MNRF regional director (in accordance with the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1);
(j) for the final FMP summary, a statement that there is an opportunity during the 30-day period for public inspection of the MNRF-approved FMP for any person to make a written request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations in the FMP (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.2); and
(k) a comment form (for draft plan only).
8.0  FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES

The following tables are required for a FMP.
**FMP-1: Management Unit Crown Land Summary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Land Ownership and Type</th>
<th>Crown Land</th>
<th>Patented</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Managed</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Crown Timber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsurveyed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-forested</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricultural Land</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grass &amp; Meadow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unclassified</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Non-Forested</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forested</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Productive Forest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treed Muskeg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Muskeg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brush &amp; Alder</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rock</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Non-Productive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Productive Forest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection Forest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Islands</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Protection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production Forest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent Disturbance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below Regeneration Standards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Stands</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Production</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Productive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal Forested</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Crown Land:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-1: Management Unit Crown Land Summary**

This table summarizes the area of different Crown land types for the management unit at the start of the plan period. The source of information for this table is the updated planning inventory for the management unit. Planning inventory updates for lands other than Crown managed land should be reflected in this inventory, where information is available, and particularly where large areas of these lands within the management unit have implications on the development of the FMP.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Enter the area in hectares by forest resources inventory (FRI) land type for each land ownership type and enter all subtotals and totals:

**Crown Land:**

Managed: All Crown land available for forest management purposes including, where appropriate, lands patented to Ontario government agencies. Crown Land – Managed may include area of some or all inventory land types (e.g., treed muskeg, protection forest and production forest). Area affected by forest management planning decisions (e.g., areas of concern reserves) is included.

Other: All Crown land that is not available for forest management purposes through legal designation, including areas established by policy direction (where forest management activity is not permitted) and provincial parks and conservation reserves regulated under the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act* and higher order land use decisions (e.g., Ontario Living Legacy).

**Patented Land:**

Crown Timber: Patented land where the Crown has reserved rights to some or all of the trees.

Notes for selected inventory land types:

Production Forest: Includes production forest reserve and regular production forest stands.

Recent Disturbance: Areas of stand replacing natural disturbance (e.g., fire, insect, blow down) or artificial disturbance (e.g., harvest) that have not received a silvicultural treatment for regeneration such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting.
Below Regeneration Standards: Area of productive forest stands that have received regeneration treatments such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting but do not yet meet the regeneration standards in an approved FMP. Includes natural disturbances and artificial disturbances.

Forest Stands: All existing forest stands and areas that have been successfully regenerated.
### PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

**1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:**

**2 PLAN PERIOD:** TO

**3**

**4 FMP-2: Description of Forest Units**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit Code</th>
<th>Ecosite(s)</th>
<th>Regional Forest Unit</th>
<th>Silvicultural System</th>
<th>FRI Parameters &amp; Criteria</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**5**

**6**
PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-2: Description of Forest Units

This table describes the forest units used to classify all forest stands of the management unit, including the stands that are not available for forest management activities. Forest units are used as the basis for summarizing data for many FMP, annual work schedule and management unit annual report tables.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Forest Unit:
List each forest unit including an appropriate Code and a descriptive Name. The list should include all forest units currently represented and forest units that will occur in the future as a result of management actions.

Eco-sites:
Indicate the eco-site(s) that fall within the forest unit, based on the provincial Ecological Land Classification.

Regional Forest Unit:
Indicate the regional standard forest unit(s) classification that aligns with each forest unit.

Silvicultural System:
Indicate the silvicultural system (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood, and selection) to be used for the forest unit.

FRI Parameters & Criteria:
For the purpose of assigning a forest unit to each stand, identify the appropriate FRI parameters (e.g., species composition, site class, stocking) or other criteria by which the stands are classified (e.g., plantations).

Additional Information:
Indicate any other information that is useful in describing each forest unit.
### FMP-3: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Age Class</th>
<th>Protection Forest (ha)</th>
<th>Production Forest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unavailable (ha)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stage of Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Available (ha)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Forest Unit Subtotal |                     |                         |                   |
| Forest Unit Subtotal |                     |                         |                   |
| Total                |                     |                         |                   |
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-3: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit

This table summarizes the area of managed productive Crown forest (as shown in Table FMP-1) by forest unit and age class. The source of information for this table is the planning inventory with forest units as defined in FMP-2.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**
Enter the forest unit as identified in Table FMP-2.

**Age Class:**
Enter 20-year age classes for clearcut and shelterwood management. This column is not completed for the forest units managed under the selection silvicultural system.

**Protection Forest:**
Enter the area (hectares) by forest unit and age class.

**Production Forest:**
**Unavailable:**
Enter the area (hectares) of the Crown managed production forest that is not available for timber production as a result of forest management planning decisions, current forest management guides and other known factors (e.g., actual or anticipated reserves, inaccessible area).

**Stage of Management:**
Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Available:**
Enter the area (hectares) of the managed Crown production forest area minus the Unavailable area.

Enter all totals and subtotals as required.

Ensure that the total areas in the Protection Forest and Production Forest (Unavailable and Available) columns correspond with the productive forest subtotals in Table FMP-1.
### FMP-4: Silvicultural Ground Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SGR Code</th>
<th>Silvicultural System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current Condition</th>
<th>Future Condition</th>
<th>Regeneration Standards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forest Units</td>
<td>Ecosite(s)</td>
<td>Forest Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand Characteristics</td>
<td></td>
<td>Performance:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Information

Development Information

#### Silvicultural Treatments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Most Common Treatment Package</th>
<th>Harvest Method</th>
<th>Logging Method</th>
<th>Site Preparation</th>
<th>Regeneration</th>
<th>Tending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acceptable Alternative Treatments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-4: Silvicultural Ground Rules

This table describes the silvicultural systems and types of treatments that may be used to manage a specific current forest condition to achieve a desired future forest condition. The sources of information for the table are the applicable silvicultural guide(s) and the knowledge and experience of the plan author and planning team.

Complete the table as follows for each SGR to be applied to an applicable forest unit – eco-site.

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

SGR Code:

Enter a label (maximum 15 characters) that identifies the SGR.

Silvicultural System:

Enter the silvicultural system (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood and selection) under which each forest unit will be managed. Only one silvicultural system will be identified for each forest unit.

Current Condition:

Enter the forest units (identified in FMP-2) and eco-site(s). In describing eco-site, use the provincial Ecological Land Classification (ELC) or the best available site information. Provide any additional information as required (e.g., broad soil group). Forest units and ecosites can be grouped when the future condition, the regeneration standard, and the silvicultural treatments are identical.

Future Condition:

Future conditions (resulting from the implementation of the SGR) will be described in terms of the desired forest unit, stand characteristics and development information. Enter the desired forest unit. Enter the desired stand characteristics, (e.g., average species composition, and stocking, stand density) for the mature stand condition. The development information will identify the silvicultural stratum used for the performance assessment and forest level modelling.

Regeneration Standards:

The regeneration standard is the required level of observable measures of a regenerating area to provide confidence that the target (i.e., mature) stand condition can be achieved. Regeneration standards will include establishment and performance parameters. The standards will be consistent with the definition of future forest condition used in the development of the LTMD (e.g., development of the yield curves).
For the establishment assessment, the observable measures will include age, height, species composition, the maximum time to establishment, and parameters representing the number and distribution of trees.

For the performance assessment, the observable measures will be parameters required to project yield. Observable measures will normally include age, height, species composition, measure of site quality (e.g., site class or index), and parameters representing the number and distribution of trees. The yield identified in the table will be consistent with the definition of an applicable future forest condition used in the development of the LTMD (e.g., development of the yield curves).

Silvicultural Treatments:
For each SGR, identify the most common series of silvicultural and acceptable alternative treatments. Where a silvicultural treatment differs from the recommendations in the appropriate silvicultural guide(s), that treatment will be identified as an exception.

Harvest Method:
Enter the harvest method (e.g., strip clearcut, uniform shelterwood) and any reference to commercial thinning.

Logging Method:
Enter the logging method (e.g., full tree, tree length or shortwood) to be used. Where there are options, indicate under what conditions the different methods will be used. Special restrictions on the type of logging equipment, the prescription for logging or the timing of logging to ensure site compatibility will be noted.

Site Preparation:
Enter the site preparation treatment (e.g., mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn). Combinations of site preparation treatments (e.g. chemical site preparation followed by prescribed burning) are acceptable.

Regeneration:
Enter the regeneration treatments (e.g., natural, plant, seed). Regeneration treatments that are necessary to achieve the future stand condition will be identified (e.g. species, planting density, anticipated ingress).

Tending:
Enter the tending treatments. Where achievement of a future stand condition requires a specific tending treatment (e.g., spacing), the details will be identified.
1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:
2 PLAN PERIOD: TO
3
4 FMP-5: Post-harvest Renewal Transition Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Regeneration Type</th>
<th>Target Silvicultural Stratum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yield Curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yield Curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yield Curve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-5: Post-harvest Renewal Transition Rules

This table describes the post-harvest renewal rules used in the development of the LTMD. The source of information for this table is the analysis of past silvicultural performance (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5).

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Complete the table as follows for each forest unit.

Planned Forest Unit:
- Enter the forest unit as identified in Table FMP-2.

Regeneration Type:
- Enter the regeneration type (e.g., natural, plant, seed).

Target Silvicultural Stratum:

FU:
- Enter the target forest unit as identified in the model used to develop the LTMD.

Percent FU:
- Enter the proportion of the planned forest unit transitioning to the target silvicultural stratum as identified in the model used to develop the LTMD.

Yield Curve:
- Enter the identifier for the yield curve that the target silvicultural stratum is projected to achieve.
MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:  
PLAN PERIOD:  TO  

FMP-6: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Type</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 0&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 20&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 40&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 60&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 80&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 100&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Forest Type Subtotal
Total
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-6: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest

This table summarizes the area of Crown productive forest by forest type (e.g., forest unit or provincial forest type) and age (e.g., age class or seral stage) by 20-year projections for the LTMD. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the future forest conditions over time resulting from the LTMD.

The source of information for this table is the output of forest modelling for the LTMD.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Type:**

Enter the user defined forest type. The defined forest type may be forest units as in FMP-2 or forest unit groupings.

**Age:**

Enter the user defined age. The defined age may be a twenty year age class or a seral stage age. This column is left blank for forest types managed under the selection silviculture system.

**Area (ha):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2020) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the FMP start year and <Year 20> represents FMP start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the area (hectares) for each forest type/age at each indicated year from forest modelling for the LTMD. The information shown for <Year 0> will be consistent with the Crown productive forest total summarized in FMP-1 (Crown – Total).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:
2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

FMP-7: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 0&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-7: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

This table summarizes the area of habitat for selected wildlife species by 20-year projections for the LTMD. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the habitat availability over time resulting from the LTMD.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Species:

Enter the common names of the selected wildlife species.

Area (ha):

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2020) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the FMP start year and <Year 20> represents FMP start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the area (hectares) of habitat for each selected wildlife species at each indicated year from forest modelling for the LTMD.
PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:
2 PLAN PERIOD: TO
3
4 FMP-8: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit
5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Available Harvest Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 0&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-8: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit

This table summarizes the available harvest area (i.e., for a 10-year period) by 20-year projections for the LTMD. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the projected harvest area over time resulting from the LTMD.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-2.

Available Harvest Area (ha):
Enter the actual year (e.g., 2020) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the FMP start year and <Year 20> represents FMP start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the available harvest area for the 10-year period (hectares) at each indicated year from forest modelling for the LTMD.

Enter all totals as required.
PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:
2 PLAN PERIOD: TO

FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group and Broad Size or Product Group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species Group</th>
<th>Size or Product Group</th>
<th>Available Harvest Volume (m³)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;Year 0&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Species Group Subtotal

Total
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group and Broad Size or Product Group

This table summarizes the estimated available harvest volume (i.e., for a 10-year period) by 20-year projections for the LTMD. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the available harvest volume by broad size or product group over time resulting from the LTMD.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Species Group:
Enter the species group (e.g., spruce/pine/fir, white/red pine). The species groups are normally the same as the species groups used in forest modelling.

Size or Product Group:
Enter the broad size or product group by species group.

Available Harvest Volume (m³):
Enter the actual year (e.g., 2020) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the FMP start year and <Year 20> represents FMP start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the available harvest volume for the 10-year period (cubic metres) by species group and broad size or product group at each indicated year from forest modelling for the LTMD.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
### MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:

### PLAN PERIOD: TO

**FMP-10: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Objective</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Plan Start Level</th>
<th>Desirable Level</th>
<th>Timing of Assessment</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Long</th>
<th>Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quantitative Objectives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualitative Objectives</td>
<td>Assessment:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-10: Assessment of Objective Achievement

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators and target information and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and the plan period.

Management Objective:
Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

For each Quantitative Objective:

Indicator:
Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres) for levels, targets and projections.

Plan Start Level:
Enter the FMP start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for a 10-year FMP period (e.g., available harvest volume)

Desirable Level:
Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

Timing of Assessment:
Enter the timing of assessment for the indicator (i.e., FMP preparation, and/or FMP implementation),

Target:
Enter the target level for the indicator. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

LTMD – Projections:
Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the LTMD, for the target year and for the medium and long term.
Assessment:

Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each management objective. The assessment will consider the FMP start, desirable and target levels, and the trend of the indicator over time.

For each Qualitative Objective:

Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text assessment of achievement of each management objective.
FMP-11: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern and Conditions on Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AOC ID</th>
<th>Group AOC</th>
<th>Description of Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

A. Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operational Prescription</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Exception</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

B. Primary Roads, Branch Roads, and Landings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Planned or Existing</th>
<th>Public Comment</th>
<th>Exception</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Conditions on Location, Construction or Use

C. Operational Roads, and Landings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Planned or Existing</th>
<th>Public Comment</th>
<th>Exception</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Conditions on Location, Construction or Use

D. Forestry Aggregate Pits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Planned or Existing</th>
<th>Exception</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Conditions on Location, Construction or Use
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-11: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern and Conditions on Roads, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits

This table outlines the prescriptions and conditions for areas identified as areas of concern (AOC). Each table entry represents either a group of areas of concern with a common prescription, or an individual area of concern with a unique prescription.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

AOC Identifier:
Enter the code by which an area of concern prescription and/or conditions can be identified on the operations maps and in the area of concern supplementary documentation for individual or groups of AOCs.

Group AOC:
Note in the table “Yes” or “No” to indicate whether the prescription is a group AOC.

Description of Value:
Briefly describe the value for which an AOC prescription has been prepared.

Part A: Operational Prescription
Enter the operational prescription for the area of concern including any constraints on harvest, renewal and tending operations.

Source:
Enter source of the prescription, if applicable, including the title of the forest management guide and page number from which the prescription specific direction or recommendation is located.

Exception:
Where an area of concern prescription differs from specific direction or from a recommendation in the appropriate forest management guide, the prescription will be considered an exception and indicated by placing “Yes” in the column.

Parts B, C, and D: Conditions on Location, Construction or Use
Enter conditions on location, construction or use (e.g., construction methods, mitigative measures, timing, marking or flagging requirements, notification requirements, crossing structure).
PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

Public Comment:
Enter “Yes” or “No” if public comments have been received on the crossing. Public comments are recorded in the area of concern supplementary documentation for individual or groups of AOCs.

Exception:
Where a condition on a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit differs from specific direction in the appropriate forest management guide, the condition will be considered an exception and indicated by placing “Yes” in the column.
**PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:**
2. **PLAN PERIOD:** TO
3. **FMP-12: Planned Harvest Area**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Available Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class</th>
<th>Planned Harvest Area 10 Year (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage of Management Subtotal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Forest Unit Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-12: Planned Harvest Area

This table summarizes the available harvest area, and the planned harvest area, by forest unit for comparison. The source of information for this table is the LTMD and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-2.

Available Harvest Area (ha):
Enter the 10-year available harvest area (hectares) by forest unit.

Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:
Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

Planned 10-Year Harvest Area (ha):
Enter the 10-year planned harvest area (hectares) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the planned area by stage of management and age class. The planned area will agree with the available harvest area by forest unit.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**FMP-13: Planned Harvest Volume by Species**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Volume Type</th>
<th>10-Year Available Harvest Volume (m³)</th>
<th>10-Year Planned Harvest Volume (m³)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
<td>Hardwood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Net Merchantable</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Undersize &amp; Defect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sub-Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Sub-Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-13: Planned Harvest Volume by Species

This table summarizes the available harvest volume and compares the available harvest volume to the planned harvest volume by conifer and hardwood. The source of information for this table is the LTMD and the result of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest units as identified in FMP-2.

Volume Type:
Enter the 10-year available harvest volume and planned harvest volume for net merchantable volume and undersize and defect volume.

Ten Year Available Harvest Volume (m³):
Enter the 10-year available harvest volume (cubic metres) for conifer and hardwood by forest unit. Ensure the available harvest volume matches the harvest volume in the LTMD.

Ten Year Planned Harvest Volume (m³):

Conifer:
Enter the 10-year planned conifer volume (cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

Hardwood:
Enter the 10-year planned hardwood volume (cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

1. **MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:**
2. **PLAN PERIOD:** TO

**FMP-14: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Licensee or Grouping</th>
<th>Planned Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Utilization</th>
<th>Volume Type</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Net Merchantable</th>
<th>Undersize &amp; Defect</th>
<th>Subtotal</th>
<th>Conifer</th>
<th>Hardwood</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Utilized             | Net Merchantable         | Undersize & Defect | Subtotal |         |          |                  |          |         |          |       |
|                      |                           |                   |          |         |          |                  |          |         |          |       |

| Unutilized           | Net Merchantable         | Undersize & Defect | Subtotal |         |          |                  |          |         |          |       |
|                      |                           |                   |          |         |          |                  |          |         |          |       |

| Total                |                           |                   |          |         |          |                  |          |         |          |       |
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-14: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization

This table summarizes projected utilization of the planned harvest volumes that are available for harvest from the planned harvest areas by species, product and volume type. Planning teams have the option of summarizing the planned harvest area by licensee or grouping. The table will summarize volume that is projected to be utilized and the volume that is currently anticipated to be unutilized but remains available for industrial uses.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Licensee or Grouping (Optional):
List the licensees or groupings that are expected to conduct harvesting. Where licensees are not known, groupings (e.g., tendered sale areas) shall be indicated. In the case of overlapping licences, all licensees or groupings should be shown. Where the SFL holder is the only licensee, identify the SFL name.

Planned Harvest Area (ha):
Enter the amount of planned harvest area (hectares) that is expected to be harvested by the licensees or groupings. Where overlapping licensees exist, the area may exceed the planned harvest area shown in FMP-12. Where only one licensee is identified, the area will be consistent with the planned harvest area shown in FMP-12.

Volume Type:
For the 10-year planned harvest area, identify the net merchantable and undersize or defect volumes.

Utilization:
For the 10-year planned harvest area, identify the volumes that are projected to be utilized to meet industrial wood requirements and the volumes above industrial wood requirements that are currently anticipated to be unutilized and available for industrial proposals. Unutilized volume also includes available volumes expected to be left standing in the cutover or harvested trees brought to roadside. Although this table identifies volumes not expected to be utilized, approval of the FMP does not condone wasteful practices.

Product:
Enter the anticipated product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, poles, veneer, bioproduct) where possible.
Volume by Species (m³):

Enter the volume (cubic metres) by species, product, volume type and utilization. If licensee or grouping is used, enter this information by licensee or grouping. If licensee or grouping is used, the column totals in licensee or grouping will equal the column totals in the utilized and unutilized part.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required. Total of utilized and unutilized volumes should equal total of planned harvest volume identified in FMP-13.
### FMP-15: Projected Wood Utilization by Mill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mill</th>
<th>Wood Supply Mechanism</th>
<th>Volume (m³)</th>
<th>Volume Type</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Volume by Species (m³)</th>
<th>Conifer</th>
<th>Subtotal</th>
<th>Hardwood</th>
<th>Subtotal</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Net Merchantable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Undersize &amp; Defect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-15: Projected Wood Utilization by Mill

This table lists the mills and the anticipated volumes each will utilize from the planned harvest area for the 10-year period. Volumes are summarized by volume type, product type and species. This table also summarizes the wood supply mechanisms through which the volumes were made available to each mill. The source of information for this table is FMP-13 and FMP-14 and information regarding industrial wood requirements for mills supplied from the management unit.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Mill:
List all mills projected to be supplied from the management unit.

Wood Supply Mechanism:
Enter the type(s) of mechanism under which volumes are to be made available to a mill. Mechanisms will be described under the following categories:

(a) Supply Agreement (i.e., wood supply agreement entered into under section 25 of the CFSA between the Minister and a mill);
(b) Other Crown commitment (e.g., Crown wood supply commitment other than a supply agreement, a Minister’s commitment letter);
(c) SFL holder (i.e., wood supply made available to a mill owned/operated by the holder of a single entity SFL);
(d) SFL shareholder (i.e., wood supply made available to a mill through the shareholder agreement for a shareholder SFL for the management unit);
(e) Business arrangement (i.e., wood supply made available to a mill through business arrangements); and
(f) Other (e.g., wood supply made available through a Forest Resource Licence, a conditional offer of a wood supply from the Crown, etc.)

Volume:
For each Crown wood supply commitment (i.e., Supply Agreement, other Crown commitment) enter the total volume committed. For all other wood supply mechanisms, enter the total volume that is intended to flow to each facility under that mechanism.

Volume Type:
Volumes projected to be utilized by each mill will be identified by net merchantable, and undersize and defect.

**Product:**
Enter the anticipated product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer, bioproduct) for each mill.

**Volume by Species:**
Enter the projected mill utilization volume (m$^3$) by mill, wood supply mechanism, product, and species. Ensure the total volume projected by species is consistent with utilized harvest volume in FMP-14 (with appropriate modification).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class</th>
<th>Coningency Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Conifer</th>
<th>Hardwood</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Forest Unit Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FMP-16: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-16: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume

This table summarizes the contingency harvest area and associated volume. The sources of information for this table are the LTMD and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-2.

Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:
Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

Contingency Harvest Area:
Enter the contingency harvest area (hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the contingency harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Include subtotal by forest units.

Contingency Harvest Volume:
Conifer:
Enter the conifer volume (cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

Hardwood:
Enter the hardwood volume (cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

Total:
Enter the total volume (cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.
PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

FMP-17: Planned Renewal and Tending Operations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area (ha)</th>
<th>Planned (10-Year)</th>
<th>Harvest</th>
<th>Natural Disturbance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Renewal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Regeneration</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strip Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seed Tree Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HARP/HARO/CLAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform Shelterwood - Seed Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strip Shelterwood - Strip Cut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| | Subtotal Natural |
| | |
| **Artificial** |
| Planting | |
| Seeding | |

| | Subtotal Artificial |
| | |
| **Total Regeneration** |
| | |
| **Artificial - Retreatment** |
| Planting | |
| Seeding | |

| | Total Retreatment |
| | |
| **Artificial - Supplemental** |
| Planting | |
| Seeding | |

| | Total Supplemental |
| | |
| **Site Preparation** |
| Mechanical | |
| Chemical | |
| Aerial | |
| Ground | |
| Prescribed Burn | |
| High Complexity | |
| Slash Pile Burn | |

| | Total Site Preparation |
| | |
| **Tending** |
| Cleaning | |
| Manual | |
| Mechanical | |
| Chemical | |
| Aerial | |
| Ground | |
| Prescribed Burn | |
| High Complexity | |

**Spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting**
- Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged)
- Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged)

**Other**
- Cultivation
- Pruning

| | Total Tending |
| | |

Forest Management Planning Manual 2017
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-17: Planned Renewal and Tending Operations

This table summarizes the area of renewal (regeneration and site preparation) and tending operations that are planned by disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural) and by treatment method. The source of information for this table is the LTMD, the selection of silviculture operations and the current FMP.

Note: There is no requirement to plan natural regeneration for natural disturbances.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Enter the area (hectares) for the 10-year FMP period by renewal and tending treatments.

Harvest/Natural Disturbance

Planned silvicultural treatments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance) and enter the area in hectares by treatment method. The treatment of natural disturbances where salvage harvest is completed is included under the natural disturbance columns.

Renewal

Regeneration:

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Retreatment: Enter the area of artificial regeneration associated with retreatment of unsuccessfully regenerated areas by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Supplemental: Enter the area of supplemental artificial regeneration associated with areas where natural regeneration is the primary goal, by planting and seeding treatments.

Site Preparation:

Enter the area of site preparation by treatment. Site preparation is the preparation of a seedbed for follow up artificial or natural regeneration and includes scarification. For slash pile burn, enter the net area only.
1
2 **Tending**
3 Enter the area of tending by treatment.
4
5 Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**FMP-18: Road Construction and Use Management**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Road or Road Network Identifier</th>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Plan Start Length (km)</th>
<th>Planned Construction 10 Year</th>
<th>Use Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Access Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Future Use Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Transfer Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Management Intent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A. Primary</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Branch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Operational</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-18: Road Construction and Use Management

This table summarizes planned road construction, use management, and responsibility for all primary, branch, and operational roads or operational road networks, for the 10-year period of the FMP. Existing roads that are the responsibility of the licensee, and other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes, are also identified.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Road or Road Network Identifier:
For each primary, branch and operational road, or network of operational roads, enter the unique name or code by which a road or road network can be identified on the maps, in text, and in the supplementary documentation.

Responsibility:
For each road, enter the party responsible for the road (e.g., SFL, MNRF, Other).

Plan Start Length:
For each road, enter the kilometres of existing road at the beginning of the FMP period. For new roads, enter “0”.

Construction:

Planned 10 Year:
For each primary and branch road, enter the kilometres of planned construction (10 Year) where applicable.

Use Management:
For each primary, branch and operational road or network of operational roads, complete the following columns.

Maintenance:
Provide a brief summary of the maintenance including emergency repairs to road water crossings that is likely to occur during the 10-year period.

Monitoring:
Provide a schedule of monitoring activities, including monitoring of water crossings, that is likely to occur during the 10-year period.

Access Control:
Type: If applicable, enter the type of existing access control (under the *Public Lands Act*, any other form of regulation, or forest management planning decision) or access provision that is to be established during the 10-year period.

Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2019/2020) in which access control is to be established during the 10-year period.

**Future Use Management:**
Transfer Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2024/2025) in which responsibility for the road or road network is anticipated to be transferred to MNRF.

Management Intent: Indicate MNRF’s management intent (e.g., MNRF maintain, MNRF transfer of responsibility to a third party, decommission, or no longer maintain).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**FMP-19: Planned Expenditures**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Forest Renewal Trust or Special Purpose Account (000s $)</th>
<th>Forestry Futures Trust (000s $)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Natural Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree Marking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificial Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tending</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renewal Support</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silvicultural Surveys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Eligible Silviculture Work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total**
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-19: Planned Expenditures

This table summarizes the planned expenditures to be made by activity and funding source for the 10-year period. The source of information for this table is the forecast of operations summarized in FMP-17.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Expenditures:

- Expenditures are estimated by activity and funding source.

  Activity:
  - Estimate expenditures by the broad activities listed.

Forest Renewal Trust or Special Purpose Account (000s $):

- Enter the estimates of expenditures in thousands of dollars.

Forestry Futures Trust (000s $):

- Enter the estimate of expenditures in thousands of dollars for approved projects only.

Enter all totals as required. Do not include HST in the amounts entered.

Notes for Expenditures:

- Natural Regeneration - Activities include harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting, and scarification.
- Tree Marking – Activities include tree marking for harvest using the selection and shelterwood silvicultural system. Boundary marking is ineligible.
- Artificial Regeneration - Activities include tree planting (e.g., bareroot, container, cuttings) and seeding (aerial and with site preparation).
- Site Preparation - Activities include mechanical, chemical, including cost of chemicals, chipper and debris piling, and prescribed burn.
- Tending - Activities include spacing, thinning (i.e., pre-commercial), improvement cut (i.e., even-aged and uneven-aged).
- Renewal Support - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (e.g., bareroot, container, cuttings).
- Silvicultural Surveys – Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., establishment, performance, not sufficiently regenerated).
- Other Eligible Silvicultural Work (ESW) - Includes associated administrative overhead.
1 **Protection** - Activities include insect pest control.
**PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**

1. MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:
2. PLAN PERIOD: TO
3. 
4. **FMP-20:** Planned Assessment of Establishment

### Current plan period:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit</th>
<th>Silvicultural Ground Rule (by Plan Period)</th>
<th>Assigned to SGR (ha) (all years)</th>
<th>Planned Assessment of Establishment (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvage Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Unit Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Plan Period:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit</th>
<th>Silvicultural Ground Rule (by Plan Period)</th>
<th>Assigned to SGR (ha) (all years)</th>
<th>Planned Assessment of Establishment (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salvage Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Unit Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

FMP-20: Planned Assessment of Establishment

This table summarizes the area (hectares) to be assessed for establishment during the 10-year period of the FMP by forest unit and SGR. The source of information for this table is a record of applicable SGRs (current and past FMPs), harvest and silvicultural treatments. The amount of area planned to be assessed for establishment should be consistent with the level of regeneration success required to meet FMP objectives and the LTMD as well as levels of past disturbance (i.e., harvest and natural).

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Past Plan Period:
Enter the FMP period when the harvest occurred.

Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2 or the appropriate table from a previous FMP applied to the stands at the time of harvest.

Silvicultural Ground Rule by plan period:
Enter the SGR from FMP-4 or the appropriate table from a previous FMP applied to the stands at the time of harvest. In the case where an original SGR was changed, enter only the final SGR implemented.

Assigned to SGR (all years):
Enter the total area assigned to the relevant SGR for areas that have been harvested.

Planned Assessment of Establishment
Enter the area (hectares) to be assessed.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN AMENDMENTS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>CONTINGENCY PLANS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>EARLY PLAN RENEWALS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, MID-PLAN CHECKS
### PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Preparing a Forest Management Plan Extension</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.1</td>
<td>Documentation Requirements for a Forest Management Plan Extension</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.2</td>
<td>Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3</td>
<td>Forest Management Plan Extension Availability</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>MID-PLAN CHECKS</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>Preparation of a Mid-Plan Check</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>Submission, Review and Approval</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>Mid-Plan Check Documentation</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Mid-Plan Check Availability</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>PUBLIC CONSULTATION</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.1</td>
<td>Public Notices</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.2</td>
<td>Responses to Comments</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.3</td>
<td>French Language Services Act</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.4</td>
<td>Environmental Bill of Rights</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.5</td>
<td>Issue Resolution</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>Minor Amendments</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.1</td>
<td>Public Notice Requirements</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2.2</td>
<td>Information and Maps Available</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Major Amendments</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.1</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2</td>
<td>Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2.1</td>
<td>Public Notice Requirements</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.2.2</td>
<td>Information and Maps Available</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.3</td>
<td>Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.3.1</td>
<td>Public Notice Requirements</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.3.2</td>
<td>Information and Maps Available</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3.3.3</td>
<td>Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.1</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.2</td>
<td>Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.2.1</td>
<td>Public Notice Requirements</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.2.2</td>
<td>Information and Maps Available</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.3</td>
<td>Stage Two – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.3.1</td>
<td>Public Notice Requirements</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.3.2</td>
<td>Information and Maps Available</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.4</td>
<td>Stage Three – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction Amendment</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.4.1</td>
<td>Public Notice Requirements</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.4.2</td>
<td>Information and Maps Available</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4.4.3</td>
<td>Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Deemed Amendments</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.5.1</td>
<td>Information and Maps Available</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>Contingency Plans</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.1</td>
<td>General</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.1.1</td>
<td>Public Notice Requirements</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6.1.2</td>
<td>Information and Maps Available</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>Forest Management Plan Extension</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.1</td>
<td>Public Notice Requirements</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.1.1</td>
<td>Short-Term Forest Management Plan Extension</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.1.2</td>
<td>Long-Term Forest Management Plan Extension</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7.3</td>
<td>Forest Management Plan Extension Availability</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>Mid-Plan Check</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8.1</td>
<td>Public Notice Requirements</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>Minor Amendments</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>Major Amendments</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.1</td>
<td>Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.2</td>
<td>Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.1</td>
<td>Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.2</td>
<td>Stage Two – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.3</td>
<td>Stage Three – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>Deemed Amendments</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>Contingency Plans</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>Forest Management Plan Extension</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>Mid-Plan Check</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure C-1:</td>
<td>Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..........15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure C-2:</td>
<td>Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page .......................16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure C-3:</td>
<td>Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page.........................17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure C-4:</td>
<td>Long-Term Management Direction Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page ...........................................................................................18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure C-5:</td>
<td>Contingency Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page ................................25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure C-6:</td>
<td>Forest Management Plan Extension - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..................................................................................................................................................31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure C-7:</td>
<td>Mid-Plan Check - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..................................36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS,
FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, MID-PLAN CHECKS

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual contains the planning requirements for amendments to forest management plans, contingency plans, early renewals of forest management plans, forest management plan (FMP) extensions, and mid-plan checks.

Phase-In Provisions

The requirements of Part C will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM), except as follows:

- For Part C, Section 2.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - For plan amendments categorized by the Ministry of Natural Resources Forestry (MNRF) district manager prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those amendments will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009);
  - For plan amendments categorized by the MNRF district manager after the effective date of this FMPM, those amendments will be prepared, to the extent reasonably possible, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0 of this FMPM. However, table formats should remain consistent with the existing approved forest management plan. The plan author and appropriate MNRF staff will assess the specific circumstances for the management unit, and with concurrence of the MNRF district manager, will implement the phase-in provisions in a reasonable and practical manner. Phase-in provisions will be documented in the amendment request.

- For Part C, Section 3.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - For contingency plan proposals approved by the MNRF regional director prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those contingency plans will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009).

- Part C, Section 6.0, 7.8, and 8.8 will only apply to forest management plans scheduled for renewal on or after April 1, 2019.

- For Part C, Sections 7.1 to 7.3 and 8.1 to 8.3, the following phase-in provisions apply:
  - If the MNRF district manager has categorized an amendment prior to the effective date of this FMPM, the requirements regarding public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation of Part C, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.1 to 7.3 of the FMPM (2009) will apply.
2.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN AMENDMENTS

2.1 Introduction

An amendment will be prepared for changes to a FMP or contingency plan. Part D, Section 3.5 identifies specific circumstances when changes during annual work schedule implementation do not require an amendment.

The following two types of amendments may be prepared for changes to a FMP:

(a) a requested amendment to a FMP that will be consistent with the LTMD for the management unit; and
(b) an MNRF regional director required amendment to the long-term management direction (LTMD) of an approved FMP to address a change in legislation and/or associated regulations (e.g., Endangered Species Act, 2007 (ESA)), policy, or a major disturbance that has occurred on the management unit.

An amendment to a contingency plan will be consistent with the planning proposal for the contingency plan previously approved by the MNRF regional director (Part C, Section 3.2.1).

An amendment to a FMP that has been extended will be consistent with the planning proposal for the FMP extension previously approved by the MNRF regional director (Part C, Section 5.2).

The plan author will prepare and certify an amendment, and submit the amendment to MNRF in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM and Forest Information Manual (FIM). The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs. In those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her organization will assign the plan author.

The planning requirements for a requested amendment will depend on the nature of the proposed changes but will normally involve the same technical planning requirements as would be required in the preparation of a FMP. However, the MNRF review and approval requirements, and the opportunities for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, will differ dependent on the category of amendment.

An amendment to provide protection for a species at risk will be prepared with the assistance of MNRF staff with expertise in species at risk and the ESA. Amendments will be informed in part by the ESA and any relevant ESA policy direction.
If a FMP or contingency plan has been designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument in respect of a species at risk, any proposed amendment to the FMP or contingency plan will be assessed by the district manager to determine whether it would affect the requirements of the FMP or contingency plan that address ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA with respect to the species. If the amendment would not affect these requirements, the amendment will proceed in accordance with Part C, Section 2.2.

If the proposed amendment would affect the requirements of the FMP or contingency plan that address ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA with respect to a species at risk, before the amendment to the FMP or contingency plan is approved, the Minister or the Minister’s delegate will form opinions regarding whether the FMP or contingency plan in its proposed amended form would satisfy the requirements of ss. 18(1)(e)(iii). Prior to amendment approval, the Minister or Minister’s delegate will also consider any statement that has been published under subsection 11(8) of the ESA that applies to a species at risk for which the FMP or contingency plan would be designated as a Section 18 Instrument in its amended form.

2.2 Requested Amendment

Requested amendments will be consistent with the LTMD for the management unit. Any person can request an amendment by submitting a written request to the MNRF district manager. The amendment request will contain the following information:

(a) a brief description of the need for, and nature of, the proposed amendment;
(b) the rationale for the proposed amendment and a discussion of its significance; and
(c) if new operations are proposed:
   (i) a brief description of the proposed operations, and a description of the previously approved operations in the FMP or contingency plan that will be changed by the proposed amendment; and
   (ii) an outline of the applicable planning requirements for the proposed operations, including public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, based on the planning requirements for similar operations in a FMP.

2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments

The MNRF district manager, in consultation with the plan author and the local citizens’ committee (LCC), will decide if preparation of the requested amendment should proceed,
and the appropriate categorization of the amendment as administrative, minor or major. The MNRF district manager, in making their decision, will consider factors including:

(a) whether the requested amendment is consistent with the LTMD of the FMP;
(b) whether a First Nation or Métis community’s established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights may be adversely impacted by the proposed amendment;
(c) the amount of planning required for the proposed amendment;
(d) the amount of anticipated public or First Nation and Métis community interest in the proposed amendment;
(e) whether there are legitimate time constraints that must be met for reasons of public safety, biological or industrial necessity, or public convenience and necessity;
(f) requests of a similar nature;
(g) the adequacy and relevancy of information available at the time of the request on values potentially affected;
(h) the anticipated potential effects of the proposed operations;
(i) the necessity to comply with new laws, any order of a court or tribunal, or any authorization made under a statute or regulation; and
(j) the urgency to provide protection for species at risk under the ESA.

When the MNRF district manager has made a preliminary determination that an amendment should be categorized as administrative, and the LCC is not readily available for consultation on the categorization of the amendment, the MNRF district manager may instead consult the chair of the LCC, or his/her alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

If an amendment is required to provide protection to a species at risk, under the ESA, and the required changes are consistent with the LTMD for the management unit, the MNRF district manager should categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning to provide protection and ensure continuation of operations. The amendment will normally be categorized as administrative.

If an amendment is required to permit salvage harvest operations as a result of a natural disturbance, the MNRF district manager, in consultation with the LCC, will categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of salvage harvest operations to avoid waste of merchantable wood. If the LCC is not readily available for consultation on the categorization of the amendment in the situations described above, the MNRF district manager may consult the chair of the LCC, or his/her alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

The decision on the amendment request and the appropriate category of amendment will normally be made within 15 days of receipt of the request. The MNRF district manager will prepare a written decision, and if the LCC disagrees with the categorization of the
amendment, the MNRF district manager will record the nature of that disagreement in that
written decision. The decision will be provided to the amendment requestor, the LCC and
the sustainable forest licensee. If the decision is to proceed with the amendment, the plan
author will prepare and submit the amendment.

2.2.2 Administrative Amendments

If the MNRF district manager, in consultation with the LCC, decides that a proposed
amendment should proceed and that the appropriate category of amendment is
administrative, the necessary planning will be completed, the amendment prepared and
certified by the plan author responsible for the preparation of the administrative
amendment, and submitted to MNRF.

MNRF will undertake an internal review of the administrative amendment. This review may
recommend approval of the administrative amendment as submitted, or identify required
alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the MNRF district manager,
MNRF will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the administrative amendment,
the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF district manager, as per
the requirements of the FIM. The MNRF district manager or MNRF district supervisor will
certify and approve the administrative amendment. Figure C-1 provides the format for the
title, certification and approval page for an administrative amendment. The FIM provides
direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted
amendments to FMPs.

There are no formal public consultation requirements for the preparation of an
administrative amendment. The approved administrative amendment will be available to
the public (Part C, Section 2.5).

2.2.3 Minor Amendments

If the MNRF district manager in consultation with the LCC decides that the amendment
should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is minor, the public
consultation requirements described in Part C, Sections 7.2 and 8.2 will apply. The
amendment will be prepared in consultation with interested and affected persons,
organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities, certified by the plan author who is
responsible for the preparation of the minor amendment, and submitted to MNRF.

MNRF will undertake an internal review of the minor amendment. This review may
recommend approval of the minor amendment as submitted, or identify required alterations
and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the district manager, MNRF will forward
the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the minor amendment, the plan
author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF district manager, as per the
requirements of the FIM. The MNRF district manager will certify and approve the minor
amendment. Figure C-2 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for
a minor amendment. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages
associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs. The approved minor
amendment will be available for public inspection (Part C, Section 2.5).

2.2.4 Major Amendments

If the MNRF district manager, in consultation with the LCC, decides that the amendment
should proceed and that the appropriate category of amendment is major, the amendment
will be prepared with the participation of interested and affected persons, organizations,
and First Nation and Métis communities.

As described in Part C, Sections 7.3 and 8.3, formal opportunities for public consultation and
First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be provided at two
stages in the preparation of a major amendment.

After stage one of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement
and consultation during the preparation of the proposed major amendment, as described in
Part C, Sections 7.3.2 and 8.3.1, the major amendment will be prepared. The major
amendment will be certified by the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the
major amendment, and submitted to MNRF.

MNRF will undertake an internal review of the major amendment, in accordance with the
same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4.4), with whatever modifications MNRF
considers necessary in the circumstances. This review may recommend approval of the
major amendment as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for them.
Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward the
required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the major amendment, the plan
author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF regional resources manager, as
per the requirements of the FIM. The MNRF regional resources manager will certify and
recommend the major amendment for approval by the MNRF regional director, in
accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4), with whatever
modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

MNRF will prepare a brief description of how MNRF’s Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993 (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the major amendment, in the form of an SEV consideration document. The SEV consideration document will accompany the major amendment when it is submitted to the MNRF regional director for approval.

After approval by the MNRF regional director, the MNRF-approved major amendment is available for inspection at stage two of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in Part C, Sections 7.3.3 and 8.3.2. Figure C-3 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a major amendment. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs.

2.3 Amendment to the Long-Term Management Direction

The MNRF regional director may require an amendment to the LTMD of an approved FMP to address one of the following:

(a) a change in legislation and/or associated regulations (e.g., ESA);
(b) a change in policy; or
(c) a major disturbance (e.g., forest fire) that has occurred on the management unit.

As described in Part C, Sections 7.4 and 8.4, formal opportunities for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be provided at three stages in the preparation of an amendment to the LTMD.

The required amendment to the LTMD will be prepared in accordance with Part A, sections 1.2 to 1.2.7 (Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary. After the requirements in sections 1.2 to 1.2.7 have been completed, public consultation will be conducted in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 7.4.2 and the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 8.4.1. The MNRF review and preliminary endorsement of the LTMD will be undertaken in accordance with Part A, Section 1.3.2.

After the MNRF regional director’s preliminary endorsement of the LTMD, the planning of proposed operations will proceed. The selection of areas of operations will be in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.11. After the requirements in sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.11 have been completed, public consultation will be conducted in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 7.4.3 and the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 8.4.2.
After stage two of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation (Part C, Sections 7.4.3 and 8.4.2,) the necessary planning will be completed and the amendment to the LTMD will be prepared. The amendment to the LTMD will be certified by the plan author and submitted to MNRF.

MNRF will undertake an internal review of the amendment to the LTMD, in accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4.4), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances. This review may recommend approval of the amendment to the LTMD as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward any required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNRF regional resources manager, as per the requirements of the FIM. The MNRF regional resources manager will certify and recommend the amendment to the LTMD for approval by the MNRF regional director in accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances. If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation the MNRF regional director will approve the amendment to the LTMD.

MNRF will prepare a brief description of how MNRF’s SEV has been considered in the development of the amendment to the LTMD, in the form of an SEV consideration document. The SEV consideration document will accompany the amendment to the LTMD when it is submitted to the MNRF regional director for approval.

After approval by the MNRF regional director, the MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD is available for inspection at stage three of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in Part C, Sections 7.4.4 and 8.4.3. Figure C-4 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for an amendment to the LTMD. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to FMPs.

2.4 Amendment Documentation

Applicable documentation requirements for a FMP (Part B) will apply to the preparation of an amendment to a FMP or contingency plan. Documentation requirements for an amendment include:

(a) a title, certification and approval page;
(b) for requested amendments, the amendment request;
for requested amendments, the MNRF district manager decision on classification and decision to proceed, including any comments from the LCC and MNRF district manager rationale;
(d) amended text, tables, supplementary documentation, and information products;
(e) comments from the LCC; and
(f) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue resolution.

For an amendment to a FMP or contingency plan that has been designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument in respect of a species at risk, and the amendment has been assessed and would affect the requirements of the FMP that address ss. 18(1)(iii) of the ESA with respect to the species, the following additional documentation requirements will include:

(a) Figure B-1B: Application of Section 18 of the Endangered Species Act; and
(b) Figure B-4: Index to the components of the Forest Management Plan that relate to the Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument.

Information products associated with planned operations will be submitted with the amendment, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

If the MNRF district manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an amendment, those people will certify the parts of the amendment that they prepared, similar to a forest management plan (Part B, Figure B-1C).

If applicable, a List of Exceptions will be prepared, in the same format as for a FMP (Part B, Figure B-2), to identify prescriptions or conditions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides.

For a major amendment and an amendment to the LTMD, an SEV consideration document will be prepared by MNRF, and will accompany the amendment when it is submitted to the MNRF regional director for approval.

2.5 Deemed Amendments

Section 11(3) of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994 provides that a FMP is deemed to include part(s) of an agreement, permit or instrument issued under the ESA (e.g., S.17 2(c) permits). In the event that a FMP is amended pursuant to Section 11 (3), the requirements of Part C, Sections 2.1 to 2.5, 7.0, and 8.0 of this manual will not apply. The parts of the agreement, permit, or instrument that are deemed to be included in the FMP will be
available with the approved FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website.

The deemed amendment will be submitted to MNRF in a manner similar to a FMP amendment. Information products associated with planned operations will be submitted with the deemed amendment, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. Applicable documentation requirements for a FMP (Part B) will apply to a deemed amendment to a FMP or contingency plan.

2.6 Amendment Availability

All approved amendments will form part of, and will be available with, the approved FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the amendment.

An up-to-date list of all approved amendments will also be available on the Ontario Government website with the approved FMP. The list will include:

(a) the amendment number;
(b) the reason for the amendment;
(c) for requested amendments, the amendment category; and
(d) the amendment approval date.
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

Figure C-1: Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
Amendment 
for the 
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author’s organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby confirm that this administrative amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: [name] [date]
(if applicable)

I hereby certify that this administrative amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I approve this administrative amendment for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this administrative amendment has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this administrative amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Approved by:

[MNRF District Manager or District Supervisor] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]
Figure C-2: Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN Amendment #:
for the [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]
[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby confirm that this minor amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: [name] [date]

I hereby certify that this minor amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I approve this minor amendment for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this minor amendment has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this minor amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Approved by:

[MNRF District Manager] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:[ID]
Figure C-3: Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author’s organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby confirm that this major amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: [name] [date]
[if applicable]

I hereby certify that this major amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I recommend that this major amendment be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this major amendment has been prepared using the forest management guides. In this major amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNRF Regional Resources Manager] [date]

Approved by:

[MNRF Regional Director] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]
Figure C-4: Long-Term Management Direction Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author’s organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby confirm that this amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

Prepared by: [name] [date]
[if applicable]

I hereby certify that this amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I recommend that this amendment be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this amendment has been prepared using the forest management guides. In this amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNRF Regional Resources Manager] [date]

Approved by:

[MNRF Regional Director] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:[ID]
3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS

3.1 Introduction

A contingency plan is an interim FMP required when circumstances affect the implementation of a FMP. These circumstances are described in Part C, Section 3.2.2. The contingency plan will permit the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current FMP and the approval for implementation of the new FMP. The maximum period of a contingency plan will be consistent with the timeframe to prepare, review, and approve a 10-year FMP (i.e., 36 months, as per Figure A-1).

A FMP extension may also permit the implementation of operations from the current FMP until the approval of the new FMP (Part C, Section 5.0).

When a situation arises that requires a contingency plan, the MNRF district manager or MNRF regional resources manager will notify the MNRF regional director. Prior to preparing the contingency plan, a planning proposal must be endorsed by the MNRF regional director.

3.2 Contingency Plans

3.2.1 Contingency Plan Proposal

If a contingency plan is warranted, a planning proposal for a contingency plan will be prepared by the sustainable forest licensee, in conjunction with MNRF.

The contingency plan proposal will provide:

(a) the name of the management unit;
(b) the reason for the contingency plan;
(c) the proposed period of the contingency plan;
(d) a brief description of the proposed contents of the contingency plan, including supplementary documentation;
(e) whether the contingency plan is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA. If the contingency plan is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.0 will apply and Figure B-4 will be completed with respect to the contents of the contingency plan;
(f) a description of the public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation that has occurred to date in the preparation of the new FMP;
(g) a description of the proposed opportunities for public consultation, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue resolution in the preparation of the contingency plan;
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

(h) the requirements for the preparation and review of the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values;
(i) the schedule for the preparation, review and approval of the contingency plan;
(j) the comments and recommendations, if any, from the LCC;
(k) the identification of other resource users or uses potentially affected by operations that may be proposed in the contingency plan;
(l) major issues to be considered in the preparation of the contingency plan, if any;
(m) a discussion of the effect on the timing of the preparation and approval (i.e., planning schedule), and period of the new FMP;
(n) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the contingency plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
(o) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional resources manager, and the MNRF regional director.

Opportunities for public consultation, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue resolution will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP, subject to any modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances, and will have regard for the extent of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation that has occurred to date in the preparation of the new FMP.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of a contingency plan is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the Constitution Act, 1982, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

The MNRF regional director will review the contingency plan proposal and decide if a contingency plan will be prepared. If a contingency plan will be prepared, the MNRF regional director will provide written notice to the MOECC director, Environmental Approvals Branch. The notice will:

(a) identify the proposed period of the contingency plan; and
(b) describe the effect of proceeding with the contingency plan on the timing of the preparation and approval of the new FMP.

3.2.2 Preparation of a Contingency Plan

The contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with the planning proposal endorsed by the MNRF regional director and the requirements in this section. The contingency plan will
be prepared by a plan author, who will be a registered professional forester, assisted by a planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2) and a LCC.

Contingency plan documentation will include:

(a) a title, certification and approval page;
(b) a completed Application of Section 18 of the Endangered Species Act, if applicable (Part B, Figure B-1B);
(c) an index to Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument Components, if applicable (Part B, Figure B-4);
(d) the planning proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation;
(e) the summary of the LTMD that applies to the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2.2.2);
(f) a discussion on how the available harvest area for the period of the contingency plan was pro-rated from the LTMD;
(g) the content requirements, as per Part B, Sections 4.1 to 4.8 for all areas of operations, and if applicable, Part B, Section 4.9 for new areas of operations;
(h) other content requirements identified in the endorsed planning proposal;
(i) comments from the LCC; and
(j) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation and issue resolution.

The requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation for contingency plans are described in Part C, Sections 7.6 and 8.6.

A brief description of how MNRF’s SEV has been considered in the development of the contingency plan must be included, in the form of an SEV consideration document.

3.2.2.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan

A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the approval of a FMP (e.g., after stage four of consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a short-term plan and enables the implementation of operations until the FMP is approved for implementation.

The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations in non-contentious areas from the draft FMP and may also include areas from the current FMP that have not yet been harvested, renewed or tended. Non-contentious areas will be determined based on comments received from the public and First Nation and Métis communities during the preparation and review of the draft FMP.
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

3.2.2.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan

A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the preparation of a FMP (e.g., prior to stage four of consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a one or two-year plan and enables the implementation of operations until the FMP is prepared and approved for implementation. The appropriate planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted.

Before Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the MNRF regional director before the MNRF regional director’s preliminary endorsement of the LTMD for the FMP, the contingency plan will be consistent with the LTMD in the current FMP. The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, including contingency area, and additional areas if required.

If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current FMP, the contingency plan will incorporate those areas, and no further planning of operations is required. If additional area is required, operations will be planned in a manner consistent with the LTMD (or strategic direction) of the current FMP, and the public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation described in the endorsed planning proposal. The planning of operations for the additional area will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

After Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the MNRF regional director after the MNRF regional director’s preliminary endorsement of the LTMD for the FMP, the contingency plan will be consistent with that LTMD. The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, including contingency area, and additional areas if required.

If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current FMP, and operations in those areas is consistent with the LTMD, the contingency plan will incorporate those areas, and no further planning of operations is required. If additional area is required, the contingency plan will normally incorporate non-contentious areas that have been identified during the development of the LTMD, and reviewed by the public and First Nation and Métis community(s) at stage two or stage three of consultation. The planning of operations for the additional area will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.
3.2.2.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules

A contingency plan may be required when there is a rescheduling of the preparation of a FMP to balance the number of FMPs prepared in any particular year, or to accommodate management unit amalgamations. This type of contingency plan is normally a one, two, or three year plan and enables the implementation of operations until the FMP is prepared and approved for implementation. The appropriate planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted. The contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with Part C, Section 3.2.2.2.

3.2.2.4 Unscheduled Forest Management Plan Renewal

A contingency plan may be required if the MNRF regional director approves a mid-plan check that requires the preparation of a new FMP (Part C, Section 6.3). This type of contingency plan is normally a three-year plan and enables the implementation of operations until the FMP is prepared and approved for implementation. (Figure A-1). The appropriate planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted.

The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, and area selected from contingency area as appropriate. The planning of operations will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

3.2.3 Submission, Review and Approval of the Contingency Plan

The contingency plan will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by MNRF, including regional staff, in a manner similar to the review of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4), as described in the endorsed planning proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the MNRF review, the contingency plan will be certified and recommended for approval by the MNRF district manager and the MNRF regional resources manager. If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF district manager’s and the regional resources manager’s recommendation, the MNRF regional director will approve the contingency plan in accordance with the same requirements as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4). Figure C-5 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a contingency plan.

Where a contingency plan is proposed to be designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument under the ESA Figure B-1B will be included in the contingency plan. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted contingency plan.
3.2.4 Contingency Plan Availability

The approved contingency plan will be available to the public at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the contingency plan.
CONTINGENCY PLAN

for the

[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]

[Name of plan author's organization] for

the period from [date] to [date]

I hereby certify that I have prepared this contingency plan, including the silvicultural ground rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, with the assistance of an interdisciplinary planning team, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

Submitted by: [name] [date]

(where applicable) [Senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNRF]

I recommend that this contingency plan be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this contingency plan has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this contingency plan, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNRF District Manager] [date]

[MNRF Regional Resources Manager] [date]

Approved by:

[MNRF Regional Director] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]
4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS

4.1 Introduction

At any time during the implementation of a FMP, there may be circumstances that warrant preparation of a new FMP prior to the scheduled date.

4.2 Proposal for Early Forest Management Plan Renewal

If preparation of a new FMP is warranted, a proposal will be prepared by the sustainable forest licensee, in conjunction with MNRF and submitted to the MNRF regional director.

The proposal will contain the following information:

(a) the name of the management unit;
(b) the period for the current FMP and the proposed implementation date for the new FMP;
(c) a description of the circumstances and rationale for the preparation of a new FMP;
(d) a discussion of additional planning that may be required (e.g., an amendment to the current FMP, a contingency plan); and
(e) the comments or recommendations, if any, from the LCC.

4.3 MNRF Regional Director Review and Approval

The MNRF regional director will determine whether to proceed with the preparation of a new FMP, and notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the MNRF district manager and the manager of MNRF’s Forest Legislation and Planning Section, Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch.
5.0 **FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS**

5.1 **Introduction**

A FMP extension is an extension to the period of the current approved FMP. A FMP may be extended once, for a maximum of two years, if any planned operations for the activities of access, harvest, renewal or maintenance in the approved FMP are not expected to be completed by the end of the FMP period. The two types of FMP extensions are a short-term FMP extension (i.e., up to three months), and a long-term FMP extension (i.e., more than three months and up to a maximum of two years). The FMP extension provision does not apply to a contingency plan.

5.2 **Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal**

To initiate a FMP extension, a FMP extension proposal will be prepared by the plan author, in conjunction with MNRF. The FMP extension proposal will include:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the reason for the FMP extension;
- (c) the type of extension (i.e., short-term or long-term), and the proposed period of the FMP extension;
- (d) a discussion of planning implications for the new FMP, including:
  - (i) identification of the FMPM to be used for the preparation of the LTMD;
  - (ii) identification of how the requirements of the applicable guides will be incorporated; and
  - (iii) the schedule of FMP preparation;
- (e) a brief discussion on the progress of implementation of the current approved FMP;
- (f) a description of the planned operations from the current MNRF approved FMP to be implemented during the period of the FMP extension;
- (g) an outline of the documentation requirements for the FMP extension, including supplementary documentation;
- (h) identification and description of the proposed approach for notification and consultation with known affected persons,
- (i) identification and description of the proposed approach for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation;
- (j) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
- (k) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, the MNRF district manager and the MNRF regional director.
The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement and consultation of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of FMP extensions is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the Constitution Act, 1982, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

5.2.1 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal

The plan author will ensure that the FMP extension proposal is complete and accurate. The plan author will submit the FMP extension proposal to the MNRF regional resources manager.

5.2.1.1 Short-Term Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal

The MNRF regional resources manager will review the request and determine whether preparation of the FMP extension should proceed and what revisions to the FMP extension proposal, if any, are necessary. If the MNRF regional resources manager is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed FMP extension should proceed, the MNRF regional resources manager will recommend approval of the FMP extension proposal to the MNRF regional director.

The MNRF regional director will consider the MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation and determine if the preparation of the FMP extension should proceed. If the MNRF regional director is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed FMP extension should proceed, the MNRF regional director will notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional resources manager, and the MNRF manager, Forest Legislation and Planning Section, Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch, once the proposal is approved.

Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNRF regional director, the FMP extension will be prepared.

5.2.1.2 Long-Term Forest Management Plan Extension Proposal

The MNRF regional resources manager will review the request and determine whether preparation of the FMP extension should proceed and what revisions to the FMP extension proposal, if any, are necessary. If the MNRF regional resources manager is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed FMP extension should proceed, the MNRF regional resources manager will provide First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC an opportunity to review the FMP extension proposal and provide comments. The MNRF regional resources manager will consider comments from First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC and the MNRF regional resources manager will provide a revised copy of the proposal to the MNRF regional director.

Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNRF regional director, the FMP extension will be prepared.
communities and the LCC, if any, when deciding whether or not to recommend approval of
the FMP extension proposal to the MNRF regional director.

The MNRF regional director will consider the MNRF regional resources manager’s
recommendation and determine if the preparation of the FMP extension should proceed. If
the MNRF regional director is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed FMP
extension should proceed, the MNRF regional director will notify the sustainable forest
licensee, the plan author, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF regional resources
manager, and the MNRF manager, Forest Legislation and Planning Section, Crown Forests
and Lands Policy Branch, once the proposal is approved.

Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNRF regional director, the FMP extension
will be prepared.

5.3 Preparation of a Forest Management Plan Extension

The FMP extension will be prepared in accordance with the proposal approved by the MNRF
regional director. The FMP extension will be prepared by a plan author, who will be a
registered professional forester.

The FMP extension will incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not been
completed. FMP extensions must be informed in part by the ESA, including any applicable
habitat regulations and relevant policy direction.

The requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement
and consultation for FMP extensions are described in Part C, Sections 7.7 and 8.7.

5.3.1 Documentation Requirements for a Forest Management Plan Extension

In addition to the documentation requirements identified in the approved proposal, the FMP
extension documentation will include:

(a) a title, certification and approval page;
(b) a statement that the current FMP (i.e., date) will be extended and that it will
remain in force for the term of the extension;
(c) a description of:
   (i) the planned operations being extended; and
   (ii) any planned operations that are not being included in the FMP extension;
   and
(d) a map of the primary road corridors, branch road corridors, and the harvest
area that will be carried forward in the plan extension;
(e) comments from the LCC;
(f) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and issue resolution; and

(g) the proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation.

5.3.2 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension

The FMP extension will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by MNRF in a manner similar to the review of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4), as described in the endorsed proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the MNRF review, the MNRF regional resources manager will certify the FMP extension and recommend the FMP extension for approval by the MNRF regional director.

If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation, the MNRF regional director will approve the FMP extension in accordance with the same requirements as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.5.4). Figure C-6 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a FMP extension. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted FMP extension.

5.3.3. Forest Management Plan Extension Availability

The approved FMP extension will be available with the applicable FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the FMP extension.
Figure C-6: Forest Management Plan Extension - Title, Certification and Approval Page

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSION

for the

[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]

{Name of plan author’s organization} for

the period from [date] to [date]

I hereby certify that this forest management plan extension has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

Submitted by: [name] [date]

(where applicable) [Senior official of plan author’s organization, if other than MNRF]

I recommend that this forest management plan extension be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). I also certify that this forest management plan extension has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this forest management plan extension, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNRF Regional Resources Manager] [date]

Approved by:

[MNRF Regional Director] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]
6.0  MID-PLAN CHECKS

6.1  Introduction

In the fourth year of implementation of a FMP, the plan author and MNRF will undertake a mid-plan check. A mid-plan check is an assessment of information (e.g., final year annual report) and changes (e.g., new policy) since the approval of the FMP to determine whether or not an amendment is required to the LTMD, the planned operations that have not yet been completed, or an unscheduled FMP renewal is required.

6.2  Preparation of a Mid-Plan Check

The plan author with the assistance of the MNRF will prepare a mid-plan check. In the preparation of a mid-plan check there will be consideration of:

(a)  land use policy direction;
(b)  approved or draft resource management plans (e.g., fisheries management plans, park management plans, statements of conservation interest) that are relevant to the management unit;
(c)  any applicable statement that has been published under subsection 11(8) of the ESA, all applicable habitat regulations made under the ESA, and any relevant ESA policy direction;
(d)  inventories and information for species at risk;
(e)  independent forest audits and associated action plans and status reports for the management unit;
(f)  whether there are changes to First Nation and Métis communities’ forest management-related concerns or First Nation and Métis values information;
(g)  changes to or new legislation, regulation and/or policy (e.g., new forest management guides) that are applicable to the management unit;
(h)  the management unit annual report for the last year of the previous FMP;
(i)  the summary of discussions of the implementation of forest operations (Part E, Section 2.1.3) from the first three management unit annual reports for the current FMP and any implications on the achievement of the LTMD;
(j)  results of any major natural disturbance that has occurred on the management unit since the FMP was approved;
(k)  approaches for dealing with wood supply issues from wood supply strategy documents developed for the applicable MNRF administrative region; and
(l)  other relevant information (e.g., legal agreements or licences regarding resource use on the management unit).

A description of identified changes from the consideration of the above items will be prepared. The MNRF regional resources manager will consider the identified changes and
provide a recommendation with rationale as to whether or not an amendment is required to the FMP, or an unscheduled FMP renewal is required.

6.3 Submission, Review and Approval

The plan author will ensure that the mid-plan check is complete and accurate. The plan author will certify and submit the mid-plan check to MNRF in accordance with the requirements of the FIM by March 31st of the fourth year of implementation of the FMP. In those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her organization will assign the plan author. Figure C-7 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a mid-plan check. The mid-plan check title, certification and approval page will note the forest information portal submission identifier.

MNRF will undertake a review of the mid-plan check over a period of 30 days. Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward the required alterations, if any, to the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the mid-plan check. If alterations are required, a 30-day period is provided for the preparation of a revised mid-plan check.

During the 30-day period provided for the preparation of a revised mid-plan check, MNRF will provide the mid-plan check and any required alterations to First Nation and Métis communities for a 30-day period to review and provide comments. The MNRF regional resources manager will consider the input of First Nation and Métis communities and determine whether there are additional required alterations. Under the authority of the MNRF regional resources manager, MNRF will forward the additional required alterations, if any, to the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the mid-plan check.

MNRF will provide the mid-plan check, any required alterations, and associated MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation to the LCC. The LCC will prepare a brief statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement with the MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation. The statement will be provided to the MNRF and included in the mid-plan check.

The MNRF regional resources manager will consider the statement of the LCC when finalizing the recommendation as to whether or not an amendment is required to the FMP or an unscheduled FMP renewal is required.

If alterations were required, the plan author will certify and submit a revised mid-plan check to MNRF in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. If required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF regional resources manager, the MNRF regional resources manager will sign the mid-plan check – title, certification and approval page, and recommend the mid-plan check for approval by the MNRF regional director. The MNRF
regional resources manager’s signature on the title and certification page (Figure C-7) certifies the acceptance of the mid-plan check and associated MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation as to whether or not an amendment is required to the FMP or an unscheduled FMP renewal is required.

The MNRF regional director will review the mid-plan check and MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation. After reviewing the mid-plan check and upon considering the recommendation of the MNRF regional resources manager the MNRF regional director will decide if:

(a) the FMP does not require amendment; or
(b) the FMP requires an amendment to:
   (i) the LTMD to address new legal, policy or guide requirements or a major natural disturbance that has occurred on the management unit; or
   (ii) the remaining planned operations in the FMP; or
(c) a new FMP is required due to:
   (i) new legal, policy or guide requirements;
   (ii) the results of a major natural disturbance that has occurred; or
   (iii) in the opinion of the MNRF regional director, the continued implementation of the LTMD for the FMP will not provide for sustainability of the forest.

The MNRF regional director will sign the title and certification page (Figure C-7). The MNRF regional director’s signature on the title and certification page approves the mid-plan check for the management unit.

If the MNRF regional director approves a mid-plan check that requires an amendment to the FMP, the amendment will be prepared in accordance with Part C, Section 2.0.

If the MNRF regional director approves a mid-plan check that requires a new FMP to be prepared, the MNRF district manager, the MNRF director, Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch, and the MOECC director, Environmental Approvals Branch will be notified.

### 6.4 Mid-Plan Check Documentation

Mid-plan check documentation will include:

(a) a title, certification and approval page;
(b) a brief introduction that identifies the purpose of the mid-plan check;
(c) a description of any changes identified in the review of items listed in section 6.2;
(d) a description and supporting rationale for any required amendments to the FMP, or the rationale for requiring an unscheduled FMP renewal;
(e) the MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation on whether or not an amendment to the FMP or an unscheduled FMP renewal is required; and
(f) the LCC’s statement of general agreement or disagreement with the MNRF regional resources manager’s recommendation.

6.5 Mid-Plan Check Availability

The approved mid-plan check will be available with the approved FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the mid-plan check.
Figure C-7: Mid-Plan Check - Title, Certification and Approval Page

MID-PLAN CHECK
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]
Plan Period from [date] to [date]

[MNR Forest Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
Date, [date]

I hereby confirm that this mid-plan check is complete and accurate, and has been prepared
to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of

[R.P.F. seal]  [Plan Author]  [date]

I recommend that this mid-plan check be approved, and certify that it has been prepared in
accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and the
Forest Information Manual.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

[MNR Regional Resources Manager]  [date]

Approved by:

[MNR Regional Director]  [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]
7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

7.1 General

7.1.1 Public Notices

The requirements for the contents of notices, the recipients of notices, and information availability will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP, with any modifications MNRF district manager or MNRF regional resources manager considers necessary in the circumstances. Public notices are required for minor and major amendments, amendments to a LTMD, deemed amendments, contingency plans, FMP extensions and mid-plan checks. Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

MNRF will issue direct written notices to interested and affected persons and organizations. Media notices will be provided in advertisements in the local media.

Each public notice will:

(a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
(b) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;
(c) describe the subject matter of the amendment, contingency plan, FMP extension, or mid-plan check;
(d) identify when and where information will be available; and
(e) include the name of a contact person(s).

Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of public consultation for minor amendments, major amendments, amendments to a LTMD, deemed amendments, contingency plans, FMP extensions or mid-plan checks are described in Part C, Sections 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, 7.6, 7.7 and 7.8.

7.1.2 Responses to Comments

MNRF, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing, in a timely way, to all written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the preparation of a minor amendment, a major amendment, an amendment to the LTMD, a contingency plan or a FMP extension that relate to the LTMD or proposed operations. MNRF will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single response to the person or organization that initiated the letter. The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments if a written response has
been requested. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been considered.

7.1.3 French Language Services Act

The French Language Services Act, 1990 (FLSA) as amended from time to time, will govern the French language public consultation requirements for minor amendments, major amendments, amendments to a LTMD, contingency plans, FMP extensions, and mid-plan checks in designated areas under the act. The FLSA requirements for public consultation for FMPs (Part A, Section 2.3.2.4) will apply.

7.1.4 Environmental Bill of Rights

Under the provisions of the EBR, as amended from time to time, MNRF will place registry information notices on the provincial EBR Environmental Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued for each stage of public consultation for a major amendment, an amendment to the LTMD, or a contingency plan.

For a major amendment, a registry information notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at stage one of public consultation. At stage two, an updated registry information notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry.

For an amendment to the LTMD, a registry information notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at stage one of public consultation. At each successive stage of public consultation, an updated registry information notice will be placed on the Environmental Registry.

For an administrative or a minor amendment to a FMP or contingency plan that has been designated as a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument in respect of a species at risk, and the amendment has been assessed and would affect the requirements of the FMP or contingency plan that address ss. 18(1)(iii) of the ESA with respect to the species, a registry information notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry for 30 days prior to amendment approval.

For a contingency plan a registry information notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued to advise the public of an opportunity to inspect the MNRF-approved contingency plan (Part C, Section 7.6).

MNRF’s guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for the preparation of these notices.
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

7.1.5 Issue Resolution

If an issue arises during the preparation of a minor or major amendment, an amendment to a LTMD, a contingency plan, or a long-term FMP extension, the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1 will apply, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances (e.g., the specified schedule for issue resolution may be compressed).

7.2 Minor Amendments

One formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a minor amendment. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise interested and affected persons and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the proposed operations that the minor amendment has been accepted by the MNRF district manager and to invite the public to review the minor amendment.

7.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

A public notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to approval and implementation of the minor amendment. Direct written notices will be issued to persons and organizations who have identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are proposed in the minor amendment.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(b) a statement that further public consultation may be required if concerns are raised;
(c) a statement that the minor amendment will receive MNRF approval (by a specific date) if no concerns are raised;
(d) an explanation of how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act; and
(e) a description of the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5).

7.2.2 Information and Maps Available

The minor amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the minor amendment.
7.3 Major Amendments

7.3.1 General

Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major amendment. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are proposed in the major amendment.

7.3.2 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the major amendment. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the major amendment, including:
   (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
   (ii) the proposed corridor for each primary and branch road, if any, and proposed road locations/conditions; and
(b) to request additional contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

7.3.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the notice will:

(a) notify the public that comments are due by a specific date (30-day comment period);
(b) explain how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act;
(c) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5); and
(d) include the names of the MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.
For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and First Nation and Métis communities of the information centre.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

7.3.2.2 Information and Maps Available

Information and maps available for public review at the information centre will be comparable to the information and maps available at stage three for a FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.3), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

7.3.3 Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment

Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to inspect the MNRF-approved major amendment. The public notice will be issued upon approval of the major amendment by the MNRF regional director.

7.3.3.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the notice will advise the public that there is an opportunity to make a written request by a specific date (30-day period) to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC) for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations in the MNRF-approved major amendment (Part C, Section 7.3.3.3).

7.3.3.2 Information and Maps Available

The MNRF-approved major amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the major amendment.

7.3.3.3 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

The opportunity to make a request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment applies to major amendments to FMPs. For any
request for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations in a major amendment the requirements described in Part A, Section 2.4.2 will apply.

7.4 Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction

7.4.1 General

Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at three stages in the preparation of an amendment to the LTMD. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are proposed in the amendment to the LTMD.

7.4.2 Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to review the proposed LTMD for the management unit. Information and maps will be available for public review and comment at the appropriate MNRF offices, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. Members of the planning team will be available to discuss the material. A summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest will be available for public distribution, upon request.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on:
   (i) the proposed changes to the LTMD for the management unit;
   (ii) the areas eligible for harvest, and changes to the preferred areas for harvest operations for the remaining period of the FMP;
   (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road, if any, that is required for the next 20 years; and

(b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

7.4.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the following information may be obtained from the appropriate MNRF offices, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

(i) a summary of the proposed LTMD for the forest; and
(ii) a summary map(s) of:
- the preferred and optional harvest areas for the remaining period of the FMP; and
- alternative corridors for each new primary road, if any, that is required for the next 20 years;

(b) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);

(c) explain how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act;

(d) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5).

(e) include the names of the MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.

7.4.2.2 Information and Maps Available

Information and maps available for public review will be comparable to the information and maps available at stage two for a FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.2), with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances. The information and maps will be available at the appropriate MNRF offices, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued.

7.4.3 Stage Two – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held after the planning of proposed operations is complete. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on the proposed operations for the amendment to the LTMD, including:
   (i) the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations;
   (ii) the proposed corridors for each primary and branch road, if any, proposed operational road boundaries, and proposed conditions on roads; and

(b) to request additional contributions to the background information to be used in planning.
7.4.3.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the notice will:

(a) notify the public that comments are due by a specific date (30-day comment period);
(b) explain how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act;
(c) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5); and
(d) include the names of the MNR, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.

For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and First Nation and Métis communities of the information centre.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

7.4.3.2 Information and Maps Available

Information and maps available for public review at the information centre will be comparable to the information and maps available at stage three for a FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.3), with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

7.4.4 Stage Three – Inspection of the MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction Amendment

Stage three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to inspect the MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD. The public notice will be issued upon approval of the amendment by the MNRF regional director.

7.4.4.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the notice will advise the public that there is an opportunity to make a written request by a specific date (30-day period) to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations in the amendment to the LTMD (Part C, Section 7.4.4.3).
7.4.4.2 Information and Maps Available

The MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the amendment to the LTMD.

7.4.4.3 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

The opportunity to make a request to the director, Environmental Approvals Branch, MOECC for an individual environmental assessment applies to changes to specific planned operations resulting from amendments to the LTMD of FMPs. For any request for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned operations in an amendment to the LTMD, the requirements described in Part A, Section 2.4.2 will apply.

7.5 Deemed Amendments

Upon acceptance of a deemed amendment, a public notice will be issued by MNRF to advise interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities of changes to planned operations as a result of the deemed amendment. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the deemed amendment.

7.5.1 Information and Maps Available

The deemed amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the deemed amendment.

7.6 Contingency Plans

7.6.1 General

The public consultation provisions for the preparation of a contingency plan will be described in the endorsed planning proposal. The public consultation provisions will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP, and may vary having regard for the extent of public consultation to date on the proposed operations. A minimum of one formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a contingency plan. For example, a contingency plan required when there is a delay in the approval of a FMP will normally have
completed draft plan review (i.e., stage four of consultation). Public inspection requirements similar to stage five of consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.5) will apply, with appropriate modifications (e.g., the timeframe for public inspection may be compressed).

For contingency plans prepared for other reasons, the extent of public consultation to date in the preparation of the FMP will determine the required public consultation.

7.6.1.1 Public Notice Requirements

Public notice requirements will be consistent with similar stages for a FMP, with appropriate modifications (e.g., the timeframe for notices may be compressed (15 days)).

7.6.1.2 Information and Maps Available

The contingency plan will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the contingency plan.

7.7 Forest Management Plan Extension

One formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation during the preparation of a FMP extension. The purpose of this consultation opportunity is to advise persons and organizations who have identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension that the FMP extension proposal has been accepted by the MNRF and to provide an opportunity to comment on the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension.

7.7.1 Public Notice Requirements

A direct written notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to approval of a FMP extension. The direct written notice will be issued to persons and organizations who have identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension.
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

7.7.1.1 Short-Term Forest Management Plan Extension

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided); and

(b) an explanation of how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act.

Upon approval of the short-term FMP extension, the MNRF regional director will issue a direct written notice to persons and organizations who have identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension to advise that the FMP extension is available for inspection. The notice will normally be issued at least 90 days before operations are scheduled to commence to provide time for the submission, review, approval, and public inspection of the annual work schedule.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the direct written notice will contain the following:

(a) a statement to advise that the period of the current FMP has been extended; and

(b) the period of the FMP extension.

In the case that the MNRF regional director denies the short-term FMP extension, the MNRF regional director will issue a direct written notice to persons and organizations who had identified themselves as having an interest in, or who were known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension to advise that the FMP extension has been denied.

7.7.1.2 Long-Term Forest Management Plan Extension

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.7.1.1, the direct written notice for a long-term extension will contain:
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

(a) a statement that further public consultation may be required if concerns are raised;
(b) a statement that the long-term FMP extension will receive MNRF approval (by a specific date) if no concerns are raised; and
(c) a description of the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 7.1.5).

Upon approval of the long-term FMP extension, the MNRF regional director will issue a public notice to advise the public that the approved FMP extension is available for inspection. The notice will normally be issued at least 90 days before operations are scheduled to commence to provide time for the submission, review, approval and public inspection of the annual work schedule.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the direct written notice and media notice will contain the following:

(a) a statement to advise that the period of the current FMP has been extended; and
(b) the period of the FMP extension.

In the case that the MNRF regional director denies the long-term FMP extension, the MNRF regional director will issue a direct written notice to persons and organizations who had identified themselves as having an interest in, or who were known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension to advise that the FMP extension has been denied.

7.7.3 Forest Management Plan Extension Availability

The approved FMP extension will be available with the applicable FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the FMP extension.

7.8 Mid-Plan Check

7.8.1 Public Notice Requirements

Upon approval of a mid-plan check, MNRF will issue a media notice to advise the public that the mid-plan check has been completed, and is available on the Ontario Government website. In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.1.1, the media notice will:

(a) indicate whether or not an amendment to the FMP will be prepared;
(b) provide a brief description of why the amendment is necessary; or
(c) indicate whether or not a new FMP will be prepared.
8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION

8.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities, identified as per Part A, Section 3.1.1, in plan amendments, contingency plans, FMP extensions, or mid-plan checks.

In those cases where a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, and contains provisions for a FMP amendment, a contingency plan, or a FMP extension, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in plan amendments, contingency plans, FMP extensions, or mid-plan checks is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the Constitution Act, 1982, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, MNRF may consult with the community through a process that is not governed by the FMPM.

For each notice required for a FMP amendment, a contingency plan, a FMP extension, or a mid-plan check, a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation and Métis community in English, and if requested at the time of the last FMP or afterwards, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A notice will also be placed in the local Indigenous media where available.

8.2 Minor Amendments

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.2 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

The notice will contain an invitation to review and provide comments on the minor amendment. The notice will also include an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values.
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

1. (Part A, Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations proposed in the amendment have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

4. The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to provide the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the MNRF-approved minor amendment.

7. A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the minor amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

8.3 Major Amendments

12. The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

8.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

21. The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis community information centre. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis community information centre will be provided.

27. In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.3.2, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

30. (a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis community information centre, if such an information centre was requested by a First Nation or Métis community;

32. (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the major amendment; and

34. (c) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations in the proposed amendment have potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the information centre(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.
8.3.2 Stage Two – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Major Amendment

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 7.3.3 will apply.

The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to provide the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the MNRF-approved major amendment.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the major amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

8.4 Amendments to the Long-Term Management Direction

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.4 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

8.4.1 Stage One – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

In addition to the public notice requirements described in Part C Section 7.4.2, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

(a) an invitation to participate in the planning of forest operations which are proposed in the amendment to address identified First Nation and Métis values, the results of which will be reflected in the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the proposed amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.3) ; and

(b) a request to advise MNRF if and how the community wishes to participate in the planning of forest operations to address identified First Nation and Métis values.

8.4.2 Stage Two – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information centre. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information centre will be provided. The MNRF district manager will also provide the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the proposed amendment.
PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, AND MID-PLAN CHECKS

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 7.4.3, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

(a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information centre; if such an information centre was requested by the First Nation or Métis community; and
(b) an invitation to review and provide comment on the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations in the proposed amendment have potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the information centre(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

8.4.3 Stage Three – Inspection of MNRF-Approved Long-Term Management Direction Amendment

The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to provide the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the MNRF-approved amendment to the LTMD.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

8.5 Deemed Amendments

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

8.6 Contingency Plans

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Section 7.6.1 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

The planning proposal for the contingency plan will describe any additional requirements for First Nation or Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2). If the planning proposal for the contingency plan
includes provisions for an information centre(s), the MNRF district manager will contact the
First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First
Nation and Métis information centre. At the request of the community, a First Nation and
Métis information centre will be provided.

8.7 Forest Management Plan Extension

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Section 7.7.1 will
apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation and Métis community. The
notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

The planning proposal for the FMP extension will describe any additional requirements for
First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the
FMP extension (Part C, Section 5.2). If the planning proposal for the FMP extension includes
provisions for an information centre(s), the MNRF district manager will contact the First
Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation
and Métis information centre. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis
information centre will be provided.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for
First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the FMP extension (Part A, Section
3.6.4).

8.8 Mid-Plan Check

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 7.8.1 will apply, with
modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notice will be
provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the MNRF for
First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the mid-plan check (Part A, Section
3.6.4).
TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS

1.0 INTRODUCTION ..................................................................................................... 5
   Phase-in Provisions ................................................................................................................ 5

2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS .............................................................. 6
   Silvicultural Ground Rules .................................................................................................. 6
   Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern ....................................... 7
   Conditions on Regular Operations .................................................................................... 7
   Annual Work Schedules .................................................................................................... 7
   Management Unit Annual Reports ..................................................................................... 7

3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE ..................................................................................... 8
   3.1 Introduction ............................................................................................................... 8
   3.2 Text Content Requirements ....................................................................................... 8
      3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page ............................................................... 8
      3.2.2 Introduction ......................................................................................................... 11
      3.2.3 Harvest ................................................................................................................. 11
      3.2.4 Renewal and Maintenance (Tending and Protection) ........................................ 11
      3.2.5 Roads .................................................................................................................... 12
         3.2.5.1 Water Crossing Construction .................................................................. 12
         3.2.5.2 Other Crossings of Areas of Concern ....................................................... 13
         3.2.5.3 Water Crossing Decommissioning ............................................................ 14
         3.2.5.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits .............................................................................. 14
      3.2.6 Fire Prevention and Preparedness ....................................................................... 14
      3.2.7 Monitoring and Assessment ............................................................................... 15
      3.2.8 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map ............................................................... 15
   3.3 Information Products ............................................................................................... 16
      3.3.1 Harvest Area ........................................................................................................ 16
      3.3.2 Renewal and Maintenance ............................................................................... 16
      3.3.3 Roads ................................................................................................................... 17
      3.3.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits ..................................................................................... 18
      3.3.5 Monitoring and Assessment .............................................................................. 19
   3.4 Submission, MNRF Review and Approval of the Annual Work Schedule ................. 20
   3.5 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation ........................................ 21
      3.5.1 Revisions ............................................................................................................. 21
      3.5.2 Changes to Silvicultural Treatments ................................................................ 21
      3.5.3 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ............................ 22
         3.5.3.1 Values that no Longer Exist ....................................................................... 22
         3.5.3.2 Incorrectly Located Values ....................................................................... 22
         3.5.3.3 New Values ................................................................................................. 23
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.5.2</td>
<td>Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF TABLES

AWS – 1 Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed or Replaced ..............29
AWS – 2 Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Decommissioned .........................32

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure D-1: Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page ...............9
Figure D-1B: Annual Work Schedule - Title and Certification Page............................10
Figure D-2: Annual Work Schedule Revision - Title, Certification and Approval Page.......27
PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual describes the requirements for annual operations, including the preparation of forest operations prescriptions and annual work schedules (AWS), and the detailed project planning required before the implementation of forest operations.

The link between the prescriptions for operations in the forest management plan (FMP) and the scheduled operations in the AWS is the forest operations prescription. The requirements for the development of forest operations prescriptions are described in section 2.0.

An AWS identifies operations that are scheduled for implementation during the year. The requirements for the preparation, review, approval and viewing of an AWS are described in section 3.0.

When prescribed burns, aerial herbicide or aerial insecticide projects are scheduled in an AWS, detailed project planning is required. Section 4.0 describes the planning requirements for prescribed burns. Section 5.0 describes the project planning requirements for aerial herbicide and aerial insecticide projects.

If insect pest management programs are required, the types and locations of insect pest management activities will be determined in accordance with the requirements of section 6.0.

Section 7.0 describes the requirements for public consultation. Section 8.0 describes the requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in the scheduling and/or planning of annual operations.

Phase-in Provisions

Part D will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM), except as follows:

- Annual work schedules prepared for the 2017-2018 operating year will be prepared in accordance with Part D, Section 3.0 of the FMPM (2009)
2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and tending activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition (e.g., silvicultural ground rule (SGR)). A forest operations prescription will be developed before operations can commence. Forest operations prescriptions are integral to the silvicultural effectiveness monitoring system. Forest operations prescriptions may also be operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern prepared to protect a value. Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern may not be consistent with a SGR. Conditions on regular operations may also be prepared to protect important ecological features.

A forest operations prescription will be certified by a registered professional forester. If elements of the prescription (e.g., for an area of concern) are beyond the standard expertise of a forester, then certification by a suitably qualified person is also required. Forest operation prescription certification is provided through the certification of an AWS, as described in Part D, Section 3.2.1.

The complete forest operations prescription for a particular area of operations, or portion of an area of operations, is comprised of a combination of:

(a) the assigned SGR or operational prescription for areas of concern in the FMP(s);
(b) the appropriate silvicultural treatment(s) from the applicable SGR or operational prescription for areas of concern; and
(c) the actual SGR and silvicultural treatments implemented on the area of operations, as identified in the applicable management unit annual report(s).

Silvicultural Ground Rules

For most of the areas of operations, the SGRs in FMP-4 of the FMP are the forest operations prescriptions. FMP-4 will contain SGRs that apply to the applicable forest unit-ecosite combinations on the management unit. The most common silvicultural treatment package in the SGR identifies the suite of silvicultural treatments that will be used most frequently. However, any of the acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments identified in the SGR may also be used.

During the preparation of the AWS, the SGR for an area of operations will be confirmed or changed based on the information available at that time. If the SGR is confirmed, an appropriate silvicultural treatment(s) will be identified in the AWS. If a change to the SGR is required, an appropriate SGR from the FMP will be selected or a new SGR will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate silvicultural treatments will be identified in the AWS.
Operational Prescriptions and Conditions for Areas of Concern

The operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern in a FMP may include modified operations developed to protect or manage specific values. These modified operations, developed to provide protection that are not consistent with a SGR, are deemed to be the forest operations prescription.

In the preparation of the AWS, the operational prescription and conditions for areas of concern will be confirmed or changed to reflect updated values information. If a change to the operational prescription and/or conditions for areas of concern is required, an appropriate operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern from the FMP will be identified or a new operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be identified in the AWS.

Conditions on Regular Operations

Where a condition on regular operations has been developed through application of a forest management guide (e.g., forest management guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) these conditions apply to all forest operations prescriptions.

Annual Work Schedules

The AWS will include information products for areas scheduled for access, harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations, and assessment in accordance with the requirements of Part D Section 3.0. Further direction on the requirements for information products is provided in the Forest Information Manual (FIM).

Management Unit Annual Reports

The management unit annual report will contain the information products for areas of access, harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations, in accordance with the requirements of Part E. Further direction on the requirements for information products is provided in the FIM.
3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE

3.1 Introduction

An AWS will be prepared and approved for the management unit before any operations may proceed, and will be consistent with the FMP.

An AWS is normally required for a one-year period that normally commences on April 1, but always ends on March 31. The AWS will be submitted to the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) for review and approval. The AWS will normally be submitted at least three months before April 1.

The AWS identifies operations that were previously planned and approved in the FMP, and are scheduled for implementation during that year. In addition, planning and approval requirements for water crossings are identified in the AWS. Information products will be submitted with the AWS, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

If a species that could be affected by the forest operations authorized by an FMP is added to, or reclassified on, the SARO List such that it receives new protections under the Endangered Species Act, 2007 (ESA) the FMP and AWS will be assessed to determine whether the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are satisfied. If the requirements of the ESA and supporting policies are not satisfied, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0) and a revision to the AWS (Part D, Section 3.5) may be required.

Responsibility for the preparation of the AWS normally rests with the plan author. If a person other than the plan author produces the document, the plan author will supervise its preparation and certify the document. In those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her organization will assign the plan author.

3.2 Text Content Requirements

3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page

The first page of the AWS is a title, certification and approval page in the format of Figure D-1. The title, certification and approval page will be signed by the person who prepared the AWS, normally the plan author, the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, where applicable, and the MNRF district manager.

If the MNRF district manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an annual work schedule (e.g., water crossings), those people will certify the parts of the annual work schedule that they prepared in the format prescribed in Part D, Figure D-1B.
Figure D-1: Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page

ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author’s organization]
for the one-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I/We hereby confirm that this annual work schedule has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the FIM, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: [name] [date]

Submitted by: [name] [date]
(Where applicable) Plan Author [or senior official of plan author’s organization, if other than MNRF]

I hereby certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations which are scheduled in this annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[R.P.F. Seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I have read this annual work schedule, and found it to be complete and consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Approved by: [MNRF District Manager] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]
Figure D-1B: Annual Work Schedule - Title and Certification Page

For Sections of the Annual Work Schedule not Prepared by the Plan Author

ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the one-year period from April 1, [date] to March 31, [date]

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the annual work schedule as indicated,
to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Job Title</th>
<th>Sections prepared</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[title]</td>
<td>[sections]</td>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[date]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[title]</td>
<td>[sections]</td>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[date]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[title]</td>
<td>[sections]</td>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[date]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[title]</td>
<td>[sections]</td>
<td>[name]</td>
<td>[date]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D-10 Forest Management Planning Manual 2017
3.2.2 Introduction

A brief introduction is required to identify the purpose of the AWS. The introduction will include a statement that conditions on regular operations identified in the FMP will be followed in the implementation of the AWS.

3.2.3 Harvest

The average annual available harvest area for the 10-year period of the FMP will guide the amount of area scheduled for harvest in an AWS. FMP-12 of the FMP is the source for this information. If sufficient available harvest area remains in the FMP, up to two years of average annual available harvest area by forest unit may be identified to provide flexibility for unforeseen circumstances. A discussion of the area scheduled for harvest, including fuelwood areas, will be provided in the text. The discussion will compare the actual area intended for harvest by forest unit during the year, to the total area identified by forest unit in the harvest information product. If greater than two years average annual available harvest area is required, the rationale for additional harvest area will be provided in the text.

If details of how stand level residual requirements will be addressed during the implementation of operations were not provided in the FMP, a description will be provided in the text.

If harvest is scheduled as a result of insect pest management planning (Part D, Section 6.0) the text will refer to the applicable insect pest management program for details.

3.2.4 Renewal and Maintenance (Tending and Protection)

A discussion of the area scheduled for renewal will be provided in the text. If applicable, the text will describe how the silvicultural program addresses any recommendations identified in the annual report(s) (Part E, Section 2.1.3 or Part E, Section 3.3). The text will identify the area to be:

(a) site prepared (e.g., mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn);
(b) planted;
(c) seeded; and
(d) regenerated naturally.

A discussion of the area scheduled for tending activities (e.g., manual, mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn), spacing, pruning, pre-commercial thinning and improvement cutting will also be provided in the text.
If protection is scheduled during the year as a result of insect pest management planning (Part D, Section 6.0), the text will discuss the scheduled activities and reference the applicable insect pest management program for details.

Prescribed burn plans (Part D, Section 4.0), and project descriptions and project plans for aerial applications of herbicides or insecticides (Part D, Section 5.0), are normally prepared during the year of the AWS. Following approval, these documents will form part of and be available with the approved AWS.

3.2.5 Roads

A discussion of primary, branch and operational road construction will be provided in the text. The scheduled kilometres of primary and branch road construction will be provided. A discussion of roads scheduled to be decommissioned or have access controls established will also be provided in the text.

A discussion of road construction or maintenance activities scheduled for the purpose of creating or maintaining an airstrip along a road will be provided in the text.

3.2.5.1 Water Crossing Construction

Water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year, including existing water crossings scheduled for replacement, will be submitted with the AWS.

Water crossings planned for the following year may be submitted with the AWS to provide MNRF an ice-free season to conduct a review with respect to the Fisheries Act. Water crossings submitted the year before construction are not approved with the current year’s AWS approval.

Where an applicable approved water crossing standard identified in the FMP will be implemented (Part A, Section 1.3.6), an MNRF review of the crossing is not required. In instances where a water crossing standard does not exist, an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, or where an operational management zone related to fisheries has identified a need for MNRF review and approval, an MNRF review is required. The decision framework in the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings will be used to assist in determining crossings that require an MNRF review.

All water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year require the appropriate approval/notification forms to be completed, as per the Ministry of Natural Resources and
Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings, and submitted for inclusion in the AWS.

Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction

For each new primary, branch or operational road water crossing, a 200 metre crossing location and conditions on construction will be identified. Conditions on construction will be consistent with the FMP (Part B, Sections 4.5.3, 4.5.4 and FMP-11).

For water crossings that require an MNRF review, the 200 metre location and conditions on construction for each water crossing will be confirmed or changed as a result of the review of the water crossing, with respect to the Fisheries Act, or operational considerations. Water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year, including existing water crossings scheduled for replacement, will require approval as part of the AWS or the approval of a revision to the AWS.

Each water crossing scheduled for construction or replacement and the associated conditions on construction will be identified in AWS-1.

In an AWS, or any subsequent revisions to an AWS, the following information will be provided in AWS-1:

(a) results of the review of the water crossing with respect to the Fisheries Act;
(b) the description of the crossing structure;
(c) any conditions on the construction of the crossing, including preventive and mitigative measures; and
(d) the recommendation on the future removal of the crossing structure, if the forest licensee intends to transfer responsibility for the road to MNRF, and where MNRF’s management intent is to not maintain the road for public use.

3.2.5.2 Other Crossings of Areas of Concern

For each crossing of an area of concern that does not involve a water crossing, the conditions on the construction of the crossing will be confirmed or changed, consistent with the FMP (Part B, Section 4.5). If the conditions have changed, the change will be documented in the text.
3.2.5.3 Water Crossing Decommissioning

For roads where MNRF’s management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, each water crossing will be examined using MNRF’s criteria for the removal of water crossings described in MNRF’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), to determine the appropriate decommissioning activities (e.g., removal of the crossing, establishment of a ford). Where an applicable approved water crossing standard identified in the FMP will be implemented (Part A, Section 1.3.6), an MNRF review of the crossing is not required. Where a water crossing standard does not exist, where an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, or where an operational management zone related to fisheries has identified a need for MNRF review and approval, an MNRF review is required.

All water crossings scheduled to be decommissioned in the current year require the appropriate approval/notification forms to be completed, as per the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings, and submitted for inclusion in the AWS.

The conditions on removal (e.g., sediment control plan) for each water crossing will be documented in AWS-2. Approval of the water crossing removal will be provided as part of the approval of the AWS or the approval of a revision to the AWS.

3.2.5.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits

A discussion of forestry aggregate pit rehabilitation will be provided in the text. The text will identify pits scheduled for rehabilitation and discuss the rehabilitation activities that will be conducted before pit closure.

The text will also identify forestry aggregate pits where an application for a Category 9 permit will be prepared.

3.2.6 Fire Prevention and Preparedness

The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures described in the FMP will apply to the entire management unit and all licensees. The applicable section of the FMP will be referenced in the AWS.

The AWS will identify the resources available to carry out annual fire prevention and suppression operations. The MNRF guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in preparing:
(a) an itemized list, in tabular format, that describes the fire suppression equipment that will be available and maintained on areas where operations are occurring; and
(b) a description of the fire prevention or fire response responsibilities of workers involved in forest operations.

3.2.7 Monitoring and Assessment

The annual component of the 10-year compliance strategy described in the FMP (Part B, Section 4.7.1) will be provided in the text. The annual component of the compliance strategy will contain a description of the forest operations inspection program that will be implemented, as described in the Forest Compliance Handbook, and be included as part of the AWS.

If applicable, a discussion of the monitoring of exceptions to be undertaken by the sustainable forest licensee will be described in the text (Part B, Section 4.7.2).

A discussion of the area scheduled for establishment assessment and performance assessment (Part B, Section 4.7.3) will be provided in the text.

A discussion of the scheduled program for monitoring roads and water crossings will be provided in the text (Part B, Section 4.7.4). The discussion will include the methods to be used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings to determine if environmental or public safety concerns exist.

If applicable, with respect to a species at risk, a discussion of the scheduled monitoring program for the species will be provided in the text (Part B, Section 4.7.5).

3.2.8 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map

An AWS summary map of the areas that are scheduled for operations will be prepared, and will be available for public distribution. The map will portray:

(a) areas that are scheduled for harvest, renewal and maintenance operations;
(b) areas available for fuelwood;
(c) primary and branch roads to be constructed;
(d) roads and road networks with access controls; and
(e) roads and road networks to be decommissioned.
3.3 Information Products

The forest operations that are scheduled will be provided in information products in accordance with the FIM.

3.3.1 Harvest Area

The areas scheduled for harvest will be identified (Part D, Section 3.2.3). The operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern (Part B, FMP-11) associated with the areas scheduled for harvest will also be identified.

In the AWS for the first year of the FMP, areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) will be identified.

If stand level residual requirements were identified in the FMP to be addressed during the implementation of operations, the area will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will identify:

(a) the harvest block identifier;
(b) the silvicultural system;
(c) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, redirected and accelerated);
(d) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern;
(e) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained; and
(f) if applicable, stand level residual requirements.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will portray:

(a) the harvest block identifier;
(b) the silvicultural system;
(c) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, redirected and accelerated);
(d) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern;
(e) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained; and
(f) if applicable, the stand level residual requirements.

3.3.2 Renewal and Maintenance

The areas scheduled for renewal and maintenance (i.e., tending and protection) operations during the year will be identified. The operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of
PART D - ANNUAL OPERATIONS

Concern associated with the areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection operations (Part B, FMP-11), will be identified.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection will identify:

(a) the silvicultural treatments (e.g., site preparation, planting, seeding, tending); and
(b) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection will portray:

(a) the silvicultural treatments (e.g., site preparation, planting, seeding, tending); and
(b) the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.

3.3.3 Roads

Primary road corridors, branch road corridors, and operational road boundaries where roads are scheduled to be constructed, will be identified. Roads and water crossings scheduled for maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning, will be identified.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will identify:

(a) the corridors for primary and branch roads;
(b) the operational road boundaries;
(c) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;
(d) the areas of concern that intersect existing roads;
(e) the 200 metre wide water crossing location for crossings to be constructed;
(f) the roads that will be maintained;
(g) the roads and associated water crossings that will be monitored;
(h) the segments of roads that currently have access controls and the segments of roads where new access controls are scheduled, and the type of access control activities;
(i) water crossings to be replaced;
(j) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned, and the type of decommissioning activities; and
(k) the water crossings that will be decommissioned.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will portray:
PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS

1 (a) the corridors for primary and branch roads;
2 (b) the operational road boundaries;
3 (c) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;
4 (d) the areas of concern that intersect existing roads;
5 (e) the 200 metre wide water crossing location for water crossings to be constructed;
6 (f) the segments of roads that have access controls implemented and the segments of roads where new access controls are scheduled;
7 (g) water crossings to be replaced;
8 (h) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned; and
9 (i) the water crossings that will be decommissioned.

3.3.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits

Existing forestry aggregate pits and new aggregate extraction areas will be identified.

Information products associated with each existing forestry aggregate pit will identify:

(a) the unique aggregate pit identifier;
(b) the pit opening date;
(c) pits scheduled for rehabilitation;
(d) the projected date for either pit closure or an application for a category 9 permit; and
(e) the areas of concern.

Information products for new aggregate extraction areas along existing forest access roads will identify:

(a) the new aggregate extraction areas; and
(b) the areas of concern.

Information products associated with forestry aggregate pits and new aggregate extraction areas will portray:

(a) the location and unique pit identifier for each existing forestry aggregate pit;
(b) the new aggregate extraction areas; and
(c) the areas of concern.

New forestry aggregate pits are not required to be identified in the AWS in which they will be established. The information products associated with new forestry aggregate pits will be updated annually (i.e., forestry aggregate pits opened during the current AWS will be included in the AWS for the following year).
3.3.5 Monitoring and Assessment

The areas scheduled for regeneration assessment (i.e., establishment and performance) during the year will be identified.

Information products associated with areas scheduled for establishment assessment will identify:

(a) the area to be assessed;
(b) the silviculture ground rule for the area to be assessed; and
(c) the year of depletion.

Information products associated with areas scheduled for performance assessment will identify the stratum to be assessed (e.g., the forest unit and yield curve assigned after the establishment survey).
3.4 Submission, MNRF Review and Approval of the Annual Work Schedule

Prior to submission of the AWS to MNRF, the plan author will ensure the AWS:

(a) is complete and meets the structure and content requirements of Part D of this manual;
(b) calculations are correct;
(c) is edited for ease of understanding; and
(d) contains page numbers and line numbers.

The AWS will be certified by a registered professional forester. The person who prepared the AWS, normally the plan author, will sign the AWS title, certification and approval page (Figure D-1) to certify that the access, harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations in the AWS have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM, and are appropriate for the actual site conditions. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the AWS, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. If the MNRF district manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an AWS (e.g., water crossings), those people will certify the parts of the AWS that they prepared. The AWS title, certification and approval page will note the forest information portal submission identifier.

The AWS will normally be submitted to the MNRF for review and approval at least three months before its implementation that normally commences on April 1. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted AWSs.

MNRF will undertake a review of the AWS over a period of 30 days commencing January 1st, or on the submission date if received after January 1st. Under the authority of the MNRF district manager, MNRF will forward the required alterations, if any, to the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the AWS.

If alterations are required, a 30 day period is provided for the preparation of a revised AWS that will be submitted for approval. MNRF will ensure that the required alterations have been made. After the alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF district manager, the local citizens’ committee (LCC) will be provided an opportunity to view the AWS.

Following the viewing by the LCC, the MNRF district manager will decide whether to approve the AWS. As part of the AWS approval, the MNRF district manager will approve each primary, branch and operational road water crossing that has had a Fisheries Act review completed. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted AWSs.
Following approval, the AWS will be available for viewing by the public and First Nation and 
Métis communities, as described in Part D, Sections 7.2 and 8.2 for 15 days or until April 1st, 
whichever is longer. Operations may commence once the period of viewing is complete.

The AWS and any subsequent revisions to the AWS will remain available for the one-year 
duration of the AWS at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario 
Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and 
Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss 
the AWS.

3.5 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation

3.5.1 Revisions

Revisions to an AWS may be required during the year. Revisions will be consistent with the 
FMP, including any amendments to the FMP. If new areas of operations from the FMP are 
added during the year, a revision to the AWS will be required.

Where a species that could be affected by forestry operations under a FMP receives 
protection under the ESA after the approval of the AWS, a revision to the AWS may be 
required to remove or change operations until the FMP is amended to satisfy the 
requirements of the ESA and supporting policies.

A revision to an AWS will be certified by a registered professional forester, normally the plan 
author. The AWS revision title, certification and approval page will note the forest 
information portal submission identifier. The FIM provides direction for signing and 
submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted AWS revisions.

The revision will be reviewed by MNRF, approved by the MNRF district manager or district 
supervisor, and will be available with the approved AWS. Figure D-2 provides the format for 
the title, certification and approval page for a revision. The FIM provides direction for signing 
approval pages associated with electronically submitted AWS revisions.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 
3.5.5.

3.5.2 Changes to Silvicultural Treatments

During AWS implementation, if a change to the silvicultural treatment for an area scheduled 
for harvest, renewal or tending operations occurs, and:
PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS

1. a) the change is consistent with the SGR in the FMP, the change will be certified by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee;

2. b) the change is not consistent with the SGR in the FMP, an appropriate SGR from the FMP will be selected and the change will be certified by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee;

3. or

4. c) the change is not consistent with any of the SGRs in the FMP, a new SGR will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate SGR and silvicultural treatment(s) will be certified by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee.

The necessary documentation for changes to SGRs will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.3 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

3.5.3.1 Values that no Longer Exist

During the implementation of operations, it may be determined that an identified value no longer exists. In such a situation, the operational prescription for the associated area of concern in the FMP will no longer apply. The area within the planned harvest area associated with the operational prescription for the area of concern may be harvested as per the applicable SGR subject to conditions in the operational prescription for the area of concern (e.g., bald eagle restrictions). An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.3.2 Incorrectly Located Values

During the implementation of operations, the actual location of a value in or adjacent to an area of operations may be different than the portrayed location in the FMP. The operational prescription for the area of concern in the FMP will be implemented in the actual location of the value. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.
PART D - ANNUAL OPERATIONS

3.5.3.3 New Values

During the implementation of operations, previously unidentified values may be encountered. If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the new value is available in the FMP, that operational prescription will be implemented. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required.

The necessary documentation for the change in values information that does not require an amendment will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.3.4 Incorrectly Identified Values

During the implementation of operations, the actual value in an area of operations may be different than the portrayed value identified in the FMP (e.g., eagle nest instead of an osprey nest). If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the actual value is available in the FMP, the operational prescription for the area of concern in the FMP will be implemented for the value. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required.

3.5.4 Changes to Conditions on Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits for Areas of Concern

3.5.4.1 Water Crossings

Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Streams

During the construction of a road, an unidentified stream may be encountered or the actual location of a stream may be different than the portrayed location in the FMP and AWS. In cases where an applicable water crossing standard from the FMP will be implemented in its entirety, the applicable forms will be completed and submitted to MNRF in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings. Upon receipt of the applicable forms, the AWS will be deemed revised to include the water crossing and the requirements of Part D, Section 3.5.1 will not apply. The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Where an approved water crossing standard does not exist in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.3.6) or where an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, a new 200 metre wide location of the water crossing and conditions on construction will be identified in a revision to the AWS. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the Fisheries Act,
will occur before the approval of the revision to the AWS. An amendment to the FMP will not be required. The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Changes to Crossing Conditions or Locations

During the construction of a road, a change to the condition(s) on construction of a water crossing may be desired. If the change is consistent with the FMP (Part B, Section 4.5., FMP-11), the change to conditions on construction, will be identified in a revision to the AWS. If the change in conditions is not consistent with the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the Fisheries Act, will occur in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.5.1.

During the construction of a road, a change to a water crossing location may be desired. A new 200 metre wide location for the water crossing will be identified in a revision to the AWS. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the Fisheries Act, will occur in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.5.1. If the change to the water crossing location is not consistent with the FMP (e.g., road corridor, operational road boundary, area of operations, FMP-11), an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the Fisheries Act, will occur before the approval of the revision to the AWS.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Streams That Do Not Exist

During the construction of a road, it may be determined that a previously mapped stream does not exist. In such a situation, the 200 metre wide location and conditions on construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.
3.5.4.2 Non-Water Crossings

Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Values

During the construction of a road, landing or forestry aggregate pit, a previously unidentified value (i.e., other than a stream) may be encountered or the actual location of a value may be different than the location portrayed in the FMP.

If it is necessary to construct a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit within an area of concern for such a value, and applicable conditions on location(s) and/or construction are available in the FMP, those conditions will apply. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable conditions are available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS, will be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Changes to Conditions

During the construction of a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit, a change to a condition on construction may be desired. If the change is consistent with the conditions on construction identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP will not be required. A revision to the AWS will be required if the condition(s) on construction was not included in the AWS.

If a change to a condition(s) on construction is desired, and the change is not consistent with the conditions on construction identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS, will be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Values that no Longer Exist

During the construction of a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit it may be determined that an identified value no longer exists. In such a situation, the conditions on the location(s) and/or construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.
Changes to Conditions on Existing Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits

During the use of an existing road, landing or forestry aggregate pit, a change to a condition may be required for a new value or if a value no longer exists. If the required change is consistent with an available condition for an area of concern identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNRF, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.5 Documentation for Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation

For all revisions to an AWS, the necessary documentation will be prepared and, upon approval, will be available with the approved AWS.

For all changes to operations that do not require an AWS revision, or changes that were deemed to revise the AWS (Part D, Section 3.5.4.1), updated information on the location and description of values that were previously unidentified or incorrectly portrayed, or that no longer exist, will be provided to MNRF, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

For changes to the silvicultural treatment for an area scheduled for harvest, renewal or tending operations the sustainable forest licensee will be responsible for the maintenance of records for forest operation prescriptions, including changes to silvicultural treatments during AWS implementation. Any necessary documentation will be provided in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

The updated operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and conditions on construction of roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits will be provided in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

AWS revisions will remain available for the one-year duration of the AWS at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Changes to values information, operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and conditions on construction of roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits, during AWS implementation will remain available for the duration of the FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the AWS revision.
Figure D-2: Annual Work Schedule Revision - Title, Certification and Approval Page

REVISION TO THE ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE
for the

[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author’s organization]
for the one-year period from April 1, [year] to March 31,[year]

I/We hereby confirm that this revision to the annual work schedule has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and the FIM and is consistent with the forest management plan.

Prepared by: [name] [date]
Submitted by: [name] [date]
Plan Author [or senior official of plan author’s organization, if other than MNRF]

I hereby certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations which are scheduled in this revision to the annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

[R.P.F. Seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I have read this revision to the annual work schedule, and found it to be complete and consistent with the forest management plan.

Approved by: [name] [date]
[MNRF District Manager or District Supervisor]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [id]
3.6 Annual Work Schedule Tables

The tables in this section are required for each AWS.
AWS – 1  Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed or Replaced

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year of Construction</th>
<th>Water Crossing Identifier</th>
<th>Road Identifier</th>
<th>Water Crossing Structure</th>
<th>Culvert Diameter (mm)</th>
<th>Water Crossing Standard Identifier</th>
<th>Construction Conditions</th>
<th>Future Removal (Y/N)</th>
<th>Fisheries Act Review Completed (Y/N/NA)</th>
<th>Fisheries Act Review Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Current Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Future Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AWS-1: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed or Replaced

This table summarizes the scheduled water crossings to be constructed or replaced in the current year. Water crossings planned for the following year may be identified to provide MNRF an ice-free season to conduct a review with respect to the Fisheries Act. For each water crossing planned for the following year, this table should be completed to the extent reasonably possible. Each table entry represents a road crossing of areas of concern with a unique/common prescription. A source of information for this table is FMP-11.

Complete the table as follows:
Enter the management unit name, plan period and AWS year.

Year of Construction:
List individual water crossings by the anticipated year of construction (i.e., A. Current Year or B. Future Year).

Water Crossing Identifier:
Enter a unique code to identify each water crossing scheduled for installation or replacement.

Road Identifier:
Enter a unique name or code that the road can be identified by.

Water Crossing Structure:
Enter a description of the type of water crossing structure (e.g., bridge, culvert, temporary bridge) proposed.

Culvert Diameter:
Enter the culvert diameter from water crossing calculation. Enter not applicable (NA) if a culvert is not being installed.

Water Crossing Standard Identifier:
Enter the identifier from the FMP to be implemented. Enter not applicable (NA) if a water crossing standard is not being implemented.

Construction Conditions:
Enter conditions on the construction of the water crossing.

Future Removal:
If yes, enter Y and indicate the projected year of the water crossing removal. If no, enter N.
**Fisheries Act Review Completed:**
Indicate if the water crossing has been reviewed (Yes/No/NA).

**Fisheries Act Review Results:**
Enter the results of the review of the proposed water crossing, if completed (i.e.,
(i.e., Unacceptable (U) or Acceptable (A) likelihood of a *Fisheries Act* contravention).
AWS – 2 Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Decommissioned

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Water Crossing Identifier</th>
<th>Road Identifier</th>
<th>Water Crossing Structure</th>
<th>Water Crossing Standard Identifier</th>
<th>Decommissioning Activities/Conditions</th>
<th>Fisheries Act Review Completed (Y/N/NA)</th>
<th>Fisheries Act Review Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AWS-2: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Decommissioned

This table summarizes the water crossings scheduled to be decommissioned. Each table entry represents a water crossing that will be decommissioned.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and AWS year.

**Water Crossing Identifier:**
For each water crossing to be decommissioned, enter the unique code to identify the crossing.

**Road Identifier:**
For each road, enter the unique name or code that the road can be identified by.

**Water Crossing Structure:**
Enter a description of the type of water crossing structure (e.g., bridge, culvert, temporary bridge) to be decommissioned.

**Water Crossing Standard Identifier:**
Enter the water crossing standard identifier from the FMP to be implemented. Enter not applicable (NA) if a water crossing standard is not being implemented.

**Decommissioning Activities/Conditions:**
Enter conditions on the decommissioning of the water crossing.

**Fisheries Act Review Completed:**
Indicate if the water crossing has been reviewed (Yes/No/NA).

**Fisheries Act Review Results:**
Enter the results of the review of the proposed water crossing removal, if completed (i.e., Unacceptable (U) or Acceptable (A) likelihood of a Fisheries Act contravention)
For each prescribed burn scheduled during the year of the AWS, a prescribed burn plan will be prepared. MNRF’s Prescribed Burn Manual describes the requirements for the preparation, review and approval of prescribed burn plans. Prescribed burn plans will be submitted in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted prescribed burns.

First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC will be provided an opportunity to view the prescribed burn plan before its approval. The approved prescribed burn plan will form part of and be available with the AWS.

The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved prescribed burn plan are described in Part D, Sections 7.3 and 8.2.

The prescribed burn proponent is responsible to ensure each prescribed burn area will be posted at least 14 days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at main roads into the prescribed burn area. Signs will be provided in English and, where applicable, in French, in Oji-Cree, and in other Indigenous languages upon request. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of the burn, and a telephone number of a contact person who can provide more information.
5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS

Projects that involve the aerial application of a herbicide are scheduled in the AWS. Projects that involve the aerial application of an insecticide are determined during the planning of insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0).

A project description and a project plan will be prepared for each project that involves the aerial application of a herbicide or insecticide.

The project description will include:

(a) a statement of the objectives to be achieved;
(b) a description of the forest in the proposed treatment area;
(c) the rationale for the proposed treatment including a discussion of the alternatives to herbicides or insecticides considered;
(d) the technical name, formulation and Pest Control Products Act registration number (i.e., PCP number) of the herbicide or insecticide;
(e) the proposed application rate;
(f) the type of aircraft to be used (i.e., rotary, fixed wing);
(g) the name of the project supervisor;
(h) the locations of the treatment areas, identified on maps;
(i) the proposed timing of the activity; and
(j) a description of the results of the application of the MNRF/ Ministry of the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC) Buffer Zones and their display on maps.

The project plan will include:

(a) the description of the methods that will be used to notify the public and First Nation and Métis community(ies) (i.e., a communications plan);
(b) an operations plan;
(c) a safety plan; and
(d) a security plan.

The project description and project plan for an aerial herbicide project will be approved by the MNRF district manager, and will form part of and be available with the AWS. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted aerial herbicide projects.

The project description and project plan for an aerial insecticide project will be approved by the MNRF regional director as part of the development of an insect pest management program (Part D, Section 6.0), and will form part of and be available with the AWS. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted aerial insecticide projects.
The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved project description and project plan for an aerial pesticide project are described in Part D, Sections 7.4 and 8.2. The Pesticide Permit approval from the MOECC will be available for inspection at the appropriate MNRF office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, at the time of operations.

Each herbicide and insecticide spray block on Crown land will be posted not more than seven days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at all reasonable points of access and at known locations within or adjacent to the spray block where water is obtained for human consumption. Signs will remain in place for at least 30 days after the completion of the project, normally removed by November 1 of the spray year, and will clearly advise the public of the specific pesticide used in that operation. Signs will be provided in English and, where applicable, in French, in Oji-Cree, and in other Indigenous languages upon request. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of spraying, the pesticide to be used, the date when berries can again be consumed, and the telephone number of a contact person who can provide more information.
6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS

6.1 Introduction

The occurrence and extent of insect infestations are determined annually. When a major insect pest infestation exists the MNRF regional director will determine if an insect pest management program will be developed. The insect pest management program will determine the types and locations of insect pest management activities that are required.

6.2 Development of Insect Pest Management Program

When a major insect pest infestation exists, an insect pest management program will be developed by an interdisciplinary team. The team will be comprised of MNRF, staff of the sustainable forest licensee(s) and a representative(s) of the LCC(s). The representative(s) of the LCC(s) will be a member(s) from the LCC(s) in the affected area.

Areas eligible for insect pest management will be identified and portrayed on maps, and a range of management options will be considered and documented. The following management options will be considered:

(a) no treatment;
(b) accelerated harvest;
(c) redirected harvest;
(d) salvage harvest;
(e) prescribed burns;
(f) the use of insecticides;
(g) other controls (e.g., bait traps); and
(h) appropriate combinations of options (a) to (g).

When considering the use of insecticides, where alternatives to chemical insecticides are commercially available, reasonably cost-effective, and approved federally and provincially for use, MNRF will give preference to such alternatives. Each management option will be evaluated and the results will be documented. The evaluation will consist of:

(a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option for forest management purposes;
(b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option as they relate to potential effects on non-timber values identified in the areas eligible for insect pest management;
(c) a discussion of the anticipated effectiveness of the management option; and
(d) an estimate of the operational costs related to the management option.
A specific course of action will be chosen, based on a comparison of the evaluations of the management options. The reasons for the selection of the specific course of action will be documented.

The MNRF regional director will notify the MOECC director that the planning process for an insect pest management program has been initiated and shall provide the following:

(a) the reason(s) for the program;
(b) a description of the nature and extent of the major insect pest infestation;
(c) the target insect;
(d) the duration of the program;
(e) a discussion of the range of management options that shall be considered and the timing and rationale for those options;
(f) if insecticide is considered for application, the active ingredient and product name; and
(g) the MNRF and LCC contact information.

6.2.1 No Aerial Application of Insecticides

The MNRF will review the selected course of action and rationale. If the MNRF regional director agrees with the specific course of action, the MNRF regional director will approve the insect pest management program. If the approved insect pest management program involves accelerated, redirected or salvage harvest operations, the MNRF district manager will determine if an amendment to a FMP(s) is required. If so, the planning requirements for amendments to FMPs will apply (Part C, Section 2.0).

6.2.2 Aerial Application of Insecticides

If the selected course of action involves the aerial application of insecticides, specific project proposals for the insect pest management program will be prepared for review, in accordance with the requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation described in Part D, Sections 7.5 and 8.3. After the 15 day review period, a project description and a project plan will be prepared for each aerial insecticide project and submitted to MNRF for regional director approval, in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 5.0. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted insecticide pest management programs.

As part of the documentation for the insect pest management program, a brief description of how MNRF’s Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993* (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development
of the insect pest management program will be produced, in the form of an SEV consideration document.
7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

7.1 General

7.1.1 Public Notices

Public notices are required for AWSs, prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects and insect pest management programs. Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

MNRF will issue direct written notices to interested and affected persons and organizations. Media notices will also be provided in advertisements in the local media.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

The AWS, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the AWS, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects.

Insect pest management programs will be available at the appropriate MNRF office(s) and on the Ontario Government website.

7.1.2 French Language Services Act

The French Language Services Act, as amended from time to time, will govern the French language public consultation requirements for annual operations in designated areas under the act. The translation requirements in Part A, Section 2.3.2 will apply to public notices for AWSs, and public notices and signage for prescribed burns and aerial herbicide and insecticide projects. The French Language Services Act requirements for French language public consultation for FMPs (Part A, Section 2.3.2.4) will apply to insect pest management programs, with whatever modifications MNRF considers necessary in the circumstances.

7.1.3 Environmental Bill of Rights

The requirements of the EBR apply to insect pest management programs, as described in Part D, Section 7.5.1.
7.2 Annual Work Schedules

Upon approval of the AWS, at least 15 days before operations are scheduled to commence, a public notice will be issued by MNRF to advise the public that the approved AWS is available for viewing. A single notice may be issued for multiple AWSs.

A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided to persons who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the year of the AWS, and in particular those persons who have requested notice of specific activities that will occur in specific areas. Reasonable efforts will be made to identify those persons who may be directly affected, including examination of registered traplines and mining activity within the areas scheduled for operations.

The public notice will:

(a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
(b) identify where the AWS will be available for viewing;
(c) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit;
(d) indicate the opportunities for fuelwood;
(e) indicate the opportunities for tree planting jobs;
(f) identify that an AWS summary map is available; and
(g) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

The following information and maps will be available when the public notice is issued:

(a) the approved AWS; and
(b) an AWS summary map that portrays the operations that are scheduled.

The approved AWS (and any subsequent revisions to the AWS) will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the AWS.

7.3 Prescribed Burns

For prescribed burns, a public notice will be issued by the MNRF at least 30 days before the anticipated date of the burn to advise the public that the prescribed burn plan is available for inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple prescribed burns on the management unit.
A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided to known affected persons and interested persons who have requested notice of prescribed burns.

The public notice will:

(a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
(b) identify where the prescribed burn plan will be available for inspection;
(c) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit; and
(d) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

Additional consultation responsibilities for the proponent are identified in MNRF’s Prescribed Burn Manual.

The approved prescribed burn plan will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the prescribed burn plan.

7.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects

For aerial herbicide or insecticide projects, MNRF will issue a public notice at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to advise the public that the approved project description and project plan for the aerial herbicide or insecticide project is available for public inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple aerial herbicide or insecticide projects on the management unit.

A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to landowners or occupants within one kilometre of the proposed treatment area. The direct written notice will also be provided to First Nation and Métis communities and stakeholders who may be directly affected (e.g., tourism businesses with bear management areas).

The public notice will:

(a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
(b) identify where information will be available for inspection;
(c) identify the anticipated date(s) of aerial herbicide or insecticide application;
(d) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit; and
(e) include the name of a contact person and contact information.
An additional notice for each aerial herbicide or insecticide project will be issued by the MNRF at least seven days before the scheduled date of application, normally in the form of advertisements in the local media.

The approved aerial herbicide or insecticide project description and project plan will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with staff at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the aerial herbicide or insecticide projects.

7.5 Insect Pest Management Programs

7.5.1 General

When an insect pest management program results in a selected course of action that involves the aerial application of insecticides, one formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation during the preparation of specific project proposals.

Under the provisions of the EBR, as amended from time to time, MNRF will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued. MNRF’s guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for the preparation of these notices.

7.5.2 Information Centre - Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

The public consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to an information centre. Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations. The purpose of the information centre is for the public to review, and comment on, the proposed insect pest management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects. The public notice will normally be issued at least 15 days before the information centre.

The notice will include:

(a) the name of the MNRF district(s) and the purpose of the notice;
(b) when and where information will be available;
(c) a map of the MNRF district(s) where the insect pest management program is being prepared;
(d) the name of a contact person and contact information.
(e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 15 day
review period (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date
will be provided);

(f) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under
relevant provisions of the Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy
Act; and

(g) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part D, Section
7.5.4).

The following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) insect infestation map(s) and population forecasts;

(b) maps of areas eligible for insect pest management;

(c) the current version of the values maps for the affected management unit(s) in
the MNRF district(s);

(d) the evaluation of management options;

(e) the selected course of action, with reasons;

(f) draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects, and associated
maps;

(g) the results of the district insect pest management program for the same
insect species in the previous year (if any); and

(h) a comment form.

Representatives of the interdisciplinary team that developed the insect pest management
program, will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

There will be a period of 15 days from the date of the information centre for the public to
provide comments to the MNRF.

MNRF will respond in writing, in a timely way, to all written comments and submissions
received from any person or organization during the preparation of an insect pest
management program. MNRF will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or
organizations with a single response to the person or organization that initiated the letter.
The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal
comments if a written response has been requested. All responses will explain how the
comments and submissions have been considered.

7.5.3 Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval

Upon approval of an insect pest management program by the MNRF regional director, MNRF
will issue a media notice. The public notice will include:

(a) a statement that the insect pest management program has been approved;
(b) the name of the MNRF district(s) and the purpose of the notice;
(c) when and where information will be available;
(d) a map of the MNRF district(s) for which the insect pest management program
    is being prepared; and
(e) the name of a contact person and contact information.

This notice may serve as the public notice for aerial insecticide projects that will be issued at
least 30 days before the anticipated date of application (Part D, Section 5.0), if the
anticipated date of application is within 60 days.

7.5.4 Issue Resolution

If an issue arises during the preparation of an insect pest management program, the MNRF
regional director stage of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.2 will
apply.
8.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION

8.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities, identified as per Part A, Section 3.1.1, in the planning of annual work schedules, prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs.

In those cases where a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, and contains provisions for annual work schedules, prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of annual work schedules, prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the Constitution Act, 1982, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, MNRF may consult with the community through a process that is not governed by the FMPM.

For each notice required for an AWS, prescribed burn, aerial herbicide and insecticide project, and insect pest management program, a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community in English, and if requested at the time of the last FMP or afterwards, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in the local Indigenous media where available.

8.2 Annual Work Schedules

8.2.1 Preparation of the Draft Annual Work Schedule

Following completion of the draft AWS, and no later than the date of submission of the draft AWS to MNRF (normally submitted on January 1st annually), the sustainable forest licensee will provide each First Nation and Métis community a copy of the draft AWS and invite the
community to participate in a meeting to discuss the draft AWS. Communities will have 30
days to review and provide comments and, if the community expresses an interest,
participate in a meeting. The sustainable forest licensee may invite the MNRF to attend the
meeting(s). The purpose of the meeting is to discuss the operations with First Nation and
Métis communities and provide communities the opportunity to identify any updated First
Nation and Métis values that are of importance to the First Nation and Métis communities
and that may be affected by the forest operations, including the application of herbicides
(e.g., ground application, aerial application).

The sustainable forest licensee will prepare a summary of First Nation and Métis community
involvement on the draft AWS. The summary will include:

(a) a summary of communications with each First Nation and Métis community,
    the dates of any meeting(s), and the primary contact person for each First
    Nation and Métis community;
(b) a summary of comments and any updated values from each First Nation and
    Métis community; and
(c) a summary of how the sustainable forest licensee considered First Nation and
    Métis community comments and any updated values in the revised AWS.

The sustainable forest licensee will submit the summary described above to MNRF, and
provide a copy to the First Nation and Métis communities, at the time of revised AWS
submission.

If a First Nation or Métis community identifies any updated values that are of importance to
the First Nation or Métis community and that may be affected by the forest operations,
MNRF will invite the community to review and provide comments on the draft updates to
the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3).
The MNRF district manager will contact the First Nation and Métis community to provide the
updated final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values.

8.2.2 First Nation and Métis Community Notice Requirements

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Section 7.1.1 and
7.2 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.
The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain:

(a) an invitation to develop a customized consultation approach and specify that the
customized consultation approach may include some or all of the elements listed in Part
A, Section 3.4.
8.3 Prescribed Burns

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1, 7.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain:

(a) a map(s) of the prescribed burn area(s) containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of individual prescribed burn area(s).

8.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.4 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain:

(a) a map(s) of where aerial herbicide or insecticide application is planned, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of individual treatment area(s).

8.5 Insect Pest Management Programs

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

8.5.1 Information Centre –Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

The MNRF district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information centre. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information centre will be provided.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.2 and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notice will also contain:

(a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information centre; if such an information centre was requested by the First Nation or Métis community; and
(b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the proposed insect pest management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNRF approximately seven days in advance of the information centre(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

8.5.2 Notification of Insect Pest Management Program Approval

The public notice requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ............................................................. 4

### 1.0 INTRODUCTION ..................................................................................................... 4

Phase-in Provisions ................................................................................................................ 4

### 2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS........ 6

2.1 Annual Report Text .................................................................................................... 6

2.1.1 Title and Certification Page ................................................................................. 6

2.1.2 Introduction ......................................................................................................... 6

2.1.3 Discussion of Forest Operations .......................................................................... 6

2.1.4 Monitoring and Assessment ............................................................................... 7

2.1.5 Annual Report Summary Map ............................................................................. 7

2.2 Annual Report Tables ................................................................................................. 8

2.2.1 Wood Utilization ................................................................................................. 8

2.2.2 Renewal Support ................................................................................................. 8

2.2.3 Expenditures ....................................................................................................... 8

2.2.4 Pesticide Use ...................................................................................................... 8

2.2.5 Forest Operations Inspections .......................................................................... 10

2.3 Prescribed Burns ...................................................................................................... 10

2.4 Information Products ............................................................................................... 10

2.4.1 Harvest .............................................................................................................. 10

2.4.2 Natural Disturbances ........................................................................................ 11

2.4.3 Renewal and Maintenance ................................................................................. 11

2.4.4 Roads and Water Crossings ............................................................................. 12

2.4.5 Forestry Aggregate Pits ..................................................................................... 12

2.4.6 Assessment of Regeneration ............................................................................. 12

### 3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL REPORTS.............................................................................................................. 14

3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis .......................................... 14

3.1.1 Harvest Area ...................................................................................................... 14

3.1.2 Harvest Volume ................................................................................................. 14

3.1.3 Renewal and Maintenance ................................................................................. 15

3.1.4 Harvest and Regeneration ................................................................................. 15

3.1.5 Forest Condition ................................................................................................. 15

3.1.6 Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species ................................................................ 15

3.1.7 Monitoring and Assessment ............................................................................. 15

3.1.8 Mid-Plan Check ................................................................................................. 16

3.2 Analysis of Forest Disturbances ............................................................................... 16

3.3 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities ........................................................................... 16

3.4 Review of Assumptions in Modelling ...................................................................... 16

3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement .................................................................... 17

3.5.1 Risk Assessment ............................................................................................... 18
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>3.6</th>
<th>Determination of Sustainability ................................................................. 18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>Considerations for the Mid-Plan Check ................................................................ 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td><strong>SUBMISSION AND REVIEW</strong> ............................................................................. 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>All Annual Reports ............................................................................................ 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Additional Requirements for the Year Five and Final Year Annual Reports .......... 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td><strong>MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES</strong> .................................................. 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF TABLES – All Annual Reports

AR-1: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Licensee .................................................... 23
AR-3: Annual Report of Renewal Support ...................................................................... 27
AR-4: Annual Report of Expenditures ............................................................................ 30
AR-5: Summary of Planned and Completed Pesticide Applications in Ontario Crown Forests ................................................................................................................. 33
AR-6: Annual Report of Forest Compliance Inspection Reports, Non-Compliances and Remedies Applied ........................................................................................................... 35
AR-7: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Area ...................................................... 37
AR-8: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Volume ............................................... 39
AR-9: Summary of Planned and Actual Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations..... 41
AR-10: Summary of Forest Condition for the Available Managed Crown Productive Forest ................................................................................................................................. 44
AR-11: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species ................................................ 47
AR-12: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Forest Unit) .................................................... 49
AR-13: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Yield) ............................................................... 51
AR-14: Summary of Assessment of Establishment .......................................................... 54
AR-15: Summary of Assessment of Performance ............................................................ 56
AR-16: Assessment of Objective Achievement ............................................................... 58

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure E-1: Annual Report - Title and Certification Page ................................................. 9
PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

1.0  INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual contains the requirements for management unit annual reporting. An annual report will be prepared for each one-year period (i.e., April 1 to March 31) of the forest management plan (FMP), and will be submitted by the following November 15. The annual report will be certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author. In those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on the management unit, the sustainable forest licensee will assign the plan author.

Additional requirements for reports on plan implementation for Far North management units that are added to the area of the undertaking (AOU) are described in Part F of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM).

Information products associated with all operations, including road and water crossing construction and decommissioning, implemented during the year will be submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual (FIM).

Annual report tables AR-1 to AR-6 are prepared for all annual reports. Annual report tables AR-7 to AR-16 are prepared for the year five annual report and the annual report for the final year of implementation of the FMP (i.e., final year annual report).

The additional requirements for the year five and final year annual reports are described in Part E, Section 3.0.

Phase-in Provisions

Part E, Section 2.0 will apply as of the effective date of this FMPM, except as follows:

• annual reports submitted for the one year period of April 1, 2016 – March 31, 2017 will be prepared in accordance with Part E, Section 2.0 of the FMPM (2009).

Part E, Section 3.0 of this FMPM will apply to year five annual reports for forest management plans prepared in accordance with this FMPM.

Year three annual reports prepared for the one year period of April 1, 2019 – March 31, 2020 or April 1, 2020 – March 31, 2021 will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009).

Year seven annual reports prepared for the one year period of April 1, 2016 – March 31, 2017 will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009).
Commencing with year seven annual reports for the one year period of April 1, 2017 –
March 31, 2018, year seven annual reports will be prepared in accordance with the year five
annual report requirements of this FMPM, to the extent reasonably possible.

Part E, Section 3.0 will apply as of the effective date of this FMPM to final year annual
reports for forest management plans prepared in accordance with this FMPM. For forest
management plans prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2009), Part E, Section 3.0 of this
FMPM will apply, to the extent reasonably possible, to final year annual reports,
commencing with those for the one year period of April 1, 2017 – March 31, 2018.
2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

2.1 Annual Report Text

2.1.1 Title and Certification Page

The first page of the annual report is a title and certification page in the format of Figure E-1. This page identifies that the annual report has been prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author. The annual report title and certification page will be submitted to the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The annual report title and certification page will note the forest information portal submission identifier.

2.1.2 Introduction

A brief introduction is required to identify the purpose of the annual report, and identify if the annual report is a year five or final year annual report. The text will identify the relevant MNRF field, district(s) and region(s), and the sustainable forest licensee.

2.1.3 Discussion of Forest Operations

A discussion of the implementation of harvest and road construction operations will address:

(a) the progress towards harvest of the planned harvest area and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply;
(b) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of road construction and maintenance, and any related concerns; and
(c) the progress towards utilization of the volume associated with the planned harvest area (AR-1) and achievement of the planned volume for each mill (AR-2), and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply.

A discussion of the implementation of renewal and tending operations will address:

(a) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of renewal and tending, and any related concerns; and
(b) the progress towards the target forest condition (i.e., distribution of forest units) from the long-term management direction (LTMD) (AR-12 from the most recent enhanced annual report), and any adjustments required to the silvicultural program due to variances.
The text will include a description of any silvicultural trial areas undertaken.

2.1.4 Monitoring and Assessment

The text will also include a discussion of:

(a) any significant events (e.g., natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions) that have affected the implementation of the FMP, and if applicable, the potential for a FMP extension or a contingency plan;

(b) the monitoring of roads and water crossings, including the effectiveness of access controls, and any related concerns;

(c) instances of non-compliance (AR-6), including:

(i) the type(s) of non-compliance that occurred;

(ii) the cause(s) of those occurrences;

(iii) the remedies applied; and

(iv) how the sustainable forest licensee will improve the conduct of forest operations to minimize instances of non-compliance;

(d) the monitoring of exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2), if any was undertaken, and any related concerns;

(e) the monitoring of a forest-related species at risk or their habitat (Part B, Section 4.7.5), if any was undertaken, and any related concerns;

(f) the progress towards completing the planned assessments of regeneration (i.e., establishment (FMP-20) and performance), and any related concerns; and

(g) the progress towards completing the recovery of productive land (e.g., slash piles, chipper piles, landings, and roads decommissioned), and any related concerns.

2.1.5 Annual Report Summary Map

An annual report summary map will be prepared. The map will portray:

(a) areas harvested;

(b) areas of natural disturbance;

(c) areas where renewal and tending operations occurred;

(d) roads constructed;

(e) water crossings constructed;

(f) roads decommissioned; and

(g) water crossings decommissioned.
### 2.2 Annual Report Tables

#### 2.2.1 Wood Utilization

The annual report will include a table (AR-1) of harvest volume utilized by licensee, harvest area, product, species and harvest volume, and a table (AR-2) of harvest volume utilized by mill.

#### 2.2.2 Renewal Support

The annual report will include a table (AR-3) of information on seed collection, seed use and trees planted.

#### 2.2.3 Expenditures

The annual report will include a table (AR-4) of information on expenditures for renewal, tending and protection activities from the Forest Renewal Trust, Special Purpose Account, and Forestry Futures Trust.

#### 2.2.4 Pesticide Use

The annual report will include a table (AR-5) of information for ground and aerial pesticide projects conducted during the current year (i.e., the part of the calendar year immediately preceding the due date of the annual report), required by Ministry of the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC). If an incident occurred during the application of a pesticide, a separate report that describes the incident will be prepared and included in the annual report. If a complaint on a pesticide project has been received, a separate report that describes the details of the complaint will be prepared and included in the annual report.

If pesticide application operations occur or are anticipated to occur beyond the November 15 submission requirement of the annual report, an update to the annual report will be submitted as soon as possible.
Figure E-1: Annual Report - Title and Certification Page

YEAR [year] ANNUAL REPORT
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]
Plan Period [date] to [date]
[MNRF Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the year April 1, [year] to March 31, [year]

I hereby certify that this annual report is complete and accurate, and has been prepared to
the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the

[R.P.F. Seal] [Plan Author] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: [ID]

For the Year Five and Final Year Annual Report Only:

I recommend that this enhanced annual report be approved and certify that it has been
prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual,
and Forest Information Manual.

Recommended for Approval by:

[MNRF District Manager] [date]

[MNRF Regional Resources Manager] [date]

Approved by:

[MNRF Regional Director] [date]
2.2.5 Forest Operations Inspections

The annual report will include a table (AR-6) that summarizes forest operations inspections.

2.3 Prescribed Burns

Post-burn reports, as required by MNRF’s Prescribed Burn Manual, will be prepared and submitted with the annual report.

2.4 Information Products

The forest operations that were implemented during the year of the annual report will be provided in information products in accordance with the FIM.

2.4.1 Harvest

Areas of harvest operations will be reported. Information products associated with areas of harvest will identify:

(a) the harvest block identifier;
(b) the forest unit;
(c) the age class or stage of management;
(d) the silvicultural ground rule (SGR), if applicable;
(e) the target forest unit;
(f) the target yield;
(g) the silvicultural system;
(h) the harvest category (e.g., regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, redirected, accelerated, road right of way);
(i) the harvest method;
(j) the logging method; and
(k) if the harvest is a silvicultural trial.

The areas of bridging operations planned to be harvested will be identified in the annual report for the final year of the FMP, and will be associated with the available harvest area of that FMP. The area of bridging operations conducted during the first year of a FMP will be reported in the year one annual report but will be counted against the available harvest area for the previous FMP.

Areas harvested in two passes will be reported in two annual reports. The first-pass harvest area will be reported as regular harvest area and will contribute to the achievement of
PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

available harvest area. The second-pass harvest area will be reported in a subsequent annual report and will not contribute to the achievement of the available harvest area.

2.4.2 Natural Disturbances

The report of natural disturbances will contain net natural disturbance areas for stand replacing events (e.g., fire, blowdown). MNRF will provide information on the gross natural disturbance area to the sustainable forest licensee, as per the requirements of the FIM. The sustainable forest licensee will examine the gross natural disturbance area and determine the net natural disturbance area.

The information products associated with the net natural disturbance area will identify:

(a) the forest unit;
(b) the age class;
(c) the estimated conifer and hardwood volume; and
(d) the natural disturbance type (e.g., blowdown, disease, drought, fire, insects).

2.4.3 Renewal and Maintenance

Area of renewal, tending and protection operations will be reported.

Information products associated with areas of renewal, tending and protection will identify:

(a) the treatment category (e.g., regular, retreatment, supplemental);
(b) the regeneration treatment (e.g., planting, seeding, natural);
(c) the site preparation treatment (e.g., mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn, slash and chip pile management);
(d) the tending treatment (e.g., cleaning, spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting);
(e) the protection treatment (e.g., harvest, manual, insecticide); and
(f) if the treatment(s) is a silvicultural trial.

Areas harvested under the selection silvicultural system that are predominantly non-commercial improvement cuts will be identified as natural under regeneration treatment. The areas will also be identified as improvement cutting under tending.

Areas planned for natural regeneration will normally be reported in the year that the disturbance (i.e., harvest, natural) occurred. If salvage harvest is being considered in areas of natural disturbance, reporting of natural regeneration may be delayed for one or two years.
2.4.4 Roads and Water Crossings

Road construction and use management (i.e., maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning) will be reported. Water crossings constructed, monitored and decommissioned will be reported.

Information products associated with road construction and use management, and water crossings will identify:

(a) the road identifier;
(b) the road class;
(c) the road activity (e.g., construction, decommissioning, maintenance, monitoring, access control);
(d) the water crossing identifier;
(e) the water crossing type;
(f) the water crossing activity (e.g., construction, monitoring, removal); and
(g) for water crossings that were constructed or decommissioned, whether a water crossing standard was applied or a Fisheries Act review was completed.

2.4.5 Forestry Aggregate Pits

Forestry aggregate pits that had aggregate extracted or rehabilitation activities will be reported.

Information products associated with forestry aggregate pits will identify:

(a) the unique aggregate pit identifier;
(b) number of hectares requiring rehabilitation (i.e., current disturbed area);
(c) number of hectares rehabilitated;
(d) the date the pit was completely rehabilitated (i.e., latest date of complete rehabilitation as aggregate pit may be rehabilitated more than once); and
(e) number of tonnes of aggregate removed from the pit.

2.4.6 Assessment of Regeneration

The assessments of regeneration that were undertaken will be reported.

Information products associated with the establishment assessments will identify:

(a) the disturbance group (i.e., harvest, natural);
(b) the year of disturbance;
(c) the year of origin;
PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

For stands that are not successfully established, the annual report text will describe any additional silvicultural treatments required and timing for the next assessment for establishment.

Information products associated with the performance assessment will identify:

(a) the assigned stratum (i.e., the forest unit and yield curve assigned at establishment);
(b) the confirmed stratum;
(c) the species composition;
(d) breast height age;
(e) total height;
(f) age; and
(g) parameters representing the number and distribution of trees as specified in the SGR.
3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR
ANNUAL REPORTS

In addition to the requirements for all annual reports described in Part E, Section 2.0, the
requirements described in this section will apply to the year five annual report and the
annual report for the final year of implementation of the FMP (i.e., final year annual report).

Additional requirements for the year five and final year annual reports for the Whitefeather
Forest, and Far North management units that are added to the AOU are described in Part F
of the FMPM.

The year five annual report will include an assessment, analysis, and review of the
implementation of the first five years of the FMP. The year five annual report will identify
any significant events (e.g., natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions) that have
affected the achievement of objectives in the FMP. The year five annual report will be used
in the development of the next FMP.

The annual report for the final year will update the assessment, analysis and review in the
year five annual report to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.

3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis

Tables AR-7 to AR-16 and the associated analysis will replace the similarly required tables
and analysis in the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol (IFAPP). Where
these tables are not available for an independent forest audit, the requirements of the IFAPP
will apply.

3.1.1 Harvest Area

The annual report will include a table (AR-7) of planned and actual harvest area for the
current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The trend analysis will discuss trends in harvest
levels, the spatial distribution of harvested areas (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) for the current and
previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

The area of bridging operations identified in the first year of a FMP will be reported as
harvested in the trend analysis in the final year annual report for the previous FMP.

3.1.2 Harvest Volume
The annual report will include a table (AR-8) of planned and actual harvest volume for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.3 Renewal and Maintenance

The annual report will include a table (AR-9) of planned and actual renewal, tending and protection area for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.4 Harvest and Regeneration

The annual report will include a table (AR-14) that summarizes areas of harvest and regeneration for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.5 Forest Condition

The annual report will include a table (AR-10) of forest condition for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.6 Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

The annual report will include a table (AR-11) indicating the amount of wildlife habitat for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous FMPs, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.7 Monitoring and Assessment

The annual report will include a summary of the discussions of the monitoring and assessment program (Part E, Section 2.1.4) from the annual reports, and assess progress made in implementing the planned program. Implications on the achievement of objectives will be discussed.
3.1.8 Mid-Plan Check

The year five annual report will include a discussion on the results of the mid-plan check from the current FMP, including results from implementing any recommendations from the mid-plan check.

3.2 Analysis of Forest Disturbances

The annual report text will describe any implications of the area harvested and new natural disturbances on the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern. Recommendations to be considered in the planning of future harvest areas will be documented.

3.3 Analysis of Silvicultural Activities

An analysis of silvicultural activities will be prepared by a registered professional forester and documented in the text of the annual report.

The analysis will include a discussion of:

(a) planned vs. actual silvicultural activities and the identification of significant variances (AR-9);
(b) planned (FMP-19) vs. actual silvicultural expenditures (AR-4), and the identification of significant variances;
(c) planned vs. target forest units (AR-12) and any implications to forest level objectives;
(d) planned vs. target yields (AR-13) and any implications to forest level objectives;
(e) the effectiveness of SGRs (AR-14); and
(f) the assessment of performance (AR-15).

The analysis will include conclusions and recommended changes for consideration in the determination of future silvicultural activities and expenditures, and the continued use of effective SGRs and yield predictions. The analysis will also document how implications to forest level objectives will be considered in future annual work schedules.

3.4 Review of Assumptions in Modelling

In the preparation of a FMP, the development of the LTMD for the forest is based on a number of model assumptions (Part A, Section 1.2.4). The trend analysis for the implementation of forest operations (Part E, Section 3.1) and the analysis of silvicultural
activities (Part E, Section 3.3) will be reviewed. The text will discuss and compare
assumptions and projections in the model with actual operations and results as reported in
annual reports. Any issues identified with model assumptions, and conclusions and
recommendations for modifications or refinements, will be documented in the text of the
annual report.

3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement

An assessment of the achievement of management objectives in the FMP will be
documented in the text of the annual report. The assessment of information provided in all
of the annual reports for the current FMP will be considered. The independent forest audit
action plan, and associated status reports that describe progress towards addressing
independent forest audit recommendations, will be considered when assessing objective
achievement.

A summary of the assessment of objective achievement will be reported in AR-16.

The assessment will examine management objectives, indicators and targets that were
identified in the FMP for assessment at year five and the final year of implementation of the
FMP. The assessment will consider and the text will discuss the following:

(a) What is the difference between the target and the actual level achieved, and
does the difference have implications on sustainability?
(b) Has the target been achieved, or is progress being made on achievement of
the target?
(c) Is the difference a result of inaccurate predictions because of modeling
assumptions and inputs?
(d) Is the difference a result of unforeseen circumstances?
(e) Do the differences infer that the modeling assumptions require modification
to better represent the local forest?
(f) Do the levels of objective achievement suggest a need to change objectives or
make adjustments to the LTMD?

For appropriate management objectives in the FMP that are directly associated with one of
the four categories of objectives required by the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994
(CFSA) the assessment will consider and the text will discuss:

(a) Forest Diversity
   (i) Was there a substantive change in forest structure and composition?
   (ii) Do the forest condition trends in AR-10 indicate progress towards the
desired forest condition?
   (iii) Are the landscape pattern target(s) being achieved?
(iv) Are there any factors that may be interfering with forest diversity objective achievement?

(b) Social and Economic

(i) Does the data in AR-1 and AR-2 of this annual report and in equivalent tables in previous annual reports for the FMP indicate that the available harvest area and associated volume are being fully utilized?

(ii) Do the trends in AR-10 indicate a concern with the area available for forest management?

(iii) Did implementation of the FMP contribute to mill and community stability?

(iv) Were the desired benefit targets achieved?

(c) Forest Cover

(i) Were the habitat targets for selected wildlife species achieved?

(ii) Do the trends in AR-11 indicate a concern with the area of habitat for any selected wildlife species?

(d) Silviculture

(i) Were all planned renewal operations undertaken?

(ii) Did renewal treatments produce the anticipated results?

(iii) Did the forest grow and develop as projected?

If targets were not achieved, the assessment will provide reasons, a discussion of the management implications, and recommendations for future planning.

3.5.1 Risk Assessment

The risks identified with implementation of the LTMD (Part B, Section 3.7.6) will be assessed to identify any implications on objective achievement. A discussion of any management implications and recommendations for future planning will be documented in the text of the annual report.

3.6 Determination of Sustainability

The determination of sustainability in the year five and final year annual reports will conclude whether the implementation of the FMP has provided for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit, through a collective assessment of objective achievement. The determination of sustainability will conclude whether a balance of social, economic and environmental objectives is being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.
The determination of sustainability will consider the following questions:

(a) are the levels of objective achievement within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators?

(b) is there a relationship between the objectives that are not within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators (e.g., are the levels of objective achievement related to a common forest type, or a particular CFSA objective category (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1))? 

(c) are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?

(d) are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?

(e) are actual operations and results as reported in annual reports consistent with assumptions and projections in the model and FMP?

(f) have the components of the independent forest audit action plan that pertain to objective achievement and sustainability been implemented?

Documentation of the determination of sustainability will be included in the text of the annual report. The documentation will:

(a) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives and provide rationale for any management objectives where desirable levels are not achieved; and

(b) provide a conclusion as to whether the implementation of planned operations has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

3.7 Considerations for the Mid-Plan Check

The final year annual report will document any conclusions and recommendations (Part E, Section 3.1.1 to Part E, Section 3.6) that should be considered in the preparation of the mid-plan check for the next FMP.
4.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW

4.1 All Annual Reports

Before the submission of the annual report to MNRF, the plan author will ensure the annual report:

a) is complete and meets the content requirements of the FMPM and the FIM;
b) calculations are correct;
c) is structured consistent with Part E of this manual;
d) is edited for ease of understanding; and
e) contains page and line numbers.

The plan author will submit the annual report to MNRF by November 15 in accordance with the requirements of the FIM and Part E of this manual.

MNRF will have the opportunity to review the annual report for completeness and accuracy. Under the authority of the district manager, MNRF will provide the results of the review to the plan author within 30 days of receipt of the annual report. The plan author will address the comments and provide the MNRF with documentation on how the comments have been addressed, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be submitted by February 15, or 60 days from the receipt of the MNRF comments.

The plan author will present the completed annual report to the local citizens’ committee (LCC), in a manner determined by the MNRF district manager in consultation with the committee.

The annual report will remain available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons, organizations, and First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment at the appropriate MNRF office to discuss the annual report.

4.2 Additional Requirements for the Year Five and Final Year Annual Reports

MNRF will review the year five and final year annual reports, over a period of 30 days commencing November 15, or on the submission date if received after November 15. The MNRF district manager and regional resources manager will forward the list of required alterations, if any, to the plan author. The plan author will address the required alterations and provide the MNRF district manager and regional resources manager with documentation on how the alterations have been addressed, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be submitted by February 15, or 60 days from the receipt of the MNRF required alterations.
After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNRF district manager and regional resources manager, the MNRF district manager and regional resources manager will sign the annual report - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part E, Figure E-1) and recommend the annual report for approval by the MNRF regional director. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted annual reports.

If requested by the MNRF regional director, the plan author and representatives of the planning team, including the representative of the LCC, will make a presentation of the annual report to the MNRF regional director. The MNRF district manager, MNRF regional resources manager, and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the presentation.

If the MNRF regional director agrees with the MNRF district manager’s and regional resources manager’s recommendations, the MNRF regional director will approve the annual report, normally by March 1. The MNRF regional director will sign the year five and final year annual reports – Title and Certification Page (Figure E-1) submitted by the plan author.
5.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES

The tables in this section are required for annual reports. AR-1 to AR-6 are required for all annual reports. AR-7 to AR-16 are required for the year five and final year annual reports.
AR-1: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Licensee

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Licencee or Grouping</th>
<th>Harvest Area (ha)</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Harvest Volume by Species (m³)</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
<td>Subtotal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Harvest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Utilized This Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Salvage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Utilized This Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-1: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Licensee

This table summarizes the actual volumes utilized by licensee or grouping, and by product. The source of this information is the provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Part A. Harvest:
Complete this section for all invoiced and undersize and defect harvest volumes, except salvage harvest volumes. All second-pass harvest volumes are included as well.

Part B. Salvage
Complete this section for invoiced and undersize and defect salvage harvest volumes only.

Licensee or Grouping:
List all licensees or groupings that conducted harvest operations. Where there are many small operators (e.g., fuelwood operators) as licensees, groupings are permitted. Where the SFL holder is the only licensee, identify the SFL name.

Harvest Area:
Enter the area harvested in hectares by licensee or grouping.

Product:
Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, poles, veneer, bioproduct) for the actual volumes utilized.

Harvest Volume by Species:
For Part A and Part B enter the utilized volume (m³) by species and product utilized from harvest area by licensee or grouping.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**AR-2: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mill</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Volume by Species (m$^3$)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Conifer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-2: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill

This table summarizes actual volume (i.e., harvest and salvage combined) utilized by mills that received wood from the management unit, by product type and species. The source of this information is the provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Mill:
List all mills that received wood from the management unit.

Product:
Enter the product type (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer, bioproduct) utilized by each mill.

Volume by Species:
Enter the volume by species and product that was utilized by each mill. Ensure the total volume utilized by species is consistent with the volumes in AR-1.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
AR-3: Annual Report of Renewal Support

A. Seed Collected

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Seed Zone</th>
<th>Source of Seed Collection</th>
<th>Number of Seeds (000s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Seeding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Seed Zone</th>
<th>Source of Seed Collection</th>
<th>Number of Seeds Used (000s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. Tree Planting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Seed Zone</th>
<th>Source of Seed Collection</th>
<th>Number of Trees Planted (000s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-3: Annual Report of Renewal Support

This table summarizes renewal support, including number of seeds collected, the number of seeds used for direct seeding, and the number of trees planted. Seeds used and trees planted are recorded for renewal and retreatment/supplemental treatment.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

A. Seed Collected/B. Seeding/C. Tree Planting

Complete applicable table section for seed collected, seed used for seeding, and trees planted.

Species:

Enter the tree species.

Seed Zone:

Enter the seed zone for the seed collected, seed used for direct seeding, or the seed for planting (i.e., nursery) stock.

Source of Seed Collection:

Identify the source of the seed collected and used (e.g., bulk stand, seed collection area, seed production area, or seed orchard).

A. Seed Collected: Number of Seeds (000s):

This Year: Enter the number of seeds (000s) collected or purchased by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year.

To Date: Enter the number of seeds (000s) collected or purchased by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection type from the start of the plan period.

B. Seeding: Number of Seeds Used (000s):

This Year: Enter the number (000s) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year. Do not include seed used to produce nursery stock.

To Date: Enter the number (000s) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection from the start of the plan period.
C. Tree Planting: Number of Trees Planted (000s):  
This Year: Enter the number (000s) of trees (i.e., nursery stock) planted by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year.  
To Date: Enter the amount (000s) of trees (i.e., nursery stock) planted by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection from the start of the plan period.
AR-4: Annual Report of Expenditures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Expenditures ($)</th>
<th>Forest Renewal Trust or Special Purpose Account (000s $)</th>
<th>Forestry Futures Trust (000s $)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This Year</td>
<td>To Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree Marking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificial Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tending</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renewal Support</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silvicultural Surveys</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Eligible Silviculture Work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E-30  Forest Management Planning Manual 2017
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-4: Annual Report of Expenditures

This table summarizes expenditures made by activity and funding source.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Expenditures:
Enter expenditures by the broad activity categories listed. Protection expenditures are not an eligible expense from the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account.

Forest Renewal Trust or Special Purpose Account (000s $):
Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

Forestry Futures Trust (000s $):
Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

Enter actual expenditures for the report year, and actual expenditures to date from FMP start. Do not include HST in amounts reported.

Enter all totals as required.

Notes for Expenditures:

Natural Regeneration - Activities include harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting, and scarification.

Tree Marking - Activities include tree marking for harvest using the selection and shelterwood silvicultural system. Boundary marking is ineligible.

Artificial Regeneration - Activities include tree planting (e.g., bareroot, container, cuttings) and seeding (e.g., aerial and with site preparation).

Site Preparation - Activities include mechanical, chemical, including cost of chemicals, chipper and debris piling, and prescribed burn.

Tending - Activities include spacing, thinning (i.e., pre-commercial), improvement cut (i.e., even-aged, uneven-aged).

Renewal Support - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (e.g., bareroot, container, cuttings).

Silvicultural Surveys - Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., establishment, performance, not sufficiently regenerated).

Other Eligible Silvicultural Work (ESW) – Includes associated administrative overhead.
Protection - Activities include insect pest control.
This document satisfies the data reporting requirements of both the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* and the *Pesticides Act* with regard to aerial pesticide applications in Crown Forests.

### Summary of Planned and Completed Pesticide Applications in Ontario Crown Forests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Unit Name</th>
<th>Application Type</th>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Plan Period</th>
<th>Purpose of Application</th>
<th>Operator Licence #</th>
<th>Annual Report Term</th>
<th>Pesticide / PCP Number</th>
<th>Operator Licence #</th>
<th>MOECC Regional Office</th>
<th>MOECC Permit Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Spray Period**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site of Application</th>
<th>Pesticide Used</th>
<th>Exterminator</th>
<th>Aircraft</th>
<th>Incidents / Complaints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Start Date</td>
<td>End Date</td>
<td># of Applications</td>
<td>Application Rate in kg per ha.</td>
<td>Proposed Size of Treatment Area (ha)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example Data**

- **Site of Application**: 1: 20,000 Scale OBM Map Sheet Zone, East, North
- **Block**: # of Applications
- **Application Rate in kg per ha.**:
- **Proposed Size of Treatment Area (ha)**: 10
- **Actual Size of Treatment Area (ha)**: 15
- **Total Quantity of Pesticide product used in kg ai**: 500
- **Name**: John Doe
- **Number**: 123456
- **Registration Number**: 789012
- **Reference Number**: 1234567890 (Supplied by MOECC Pesticides Specialist)
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-5: Annual Summary of Planned and Completed Pesticide Applications in Ontario Crown Forests

This table summarizes planned and completed pesticide applications, including spray period, site of application, pesticide used, exterminator, aircraft, and incidents/complaints.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, annual report year, year of application, application type, purpose of application, pesticide/PCP number, concentration (grams/litre), operator, operator licence #, MOECC regional office, and MOECC permit number.

Spray Period:
Enter the start and end date for each application site.

Site of Application:
Enter the OBM map sheet zone, easting and northing, and block number for each application site.

Pesticide Used:
Enter the number of applications, application rate (kilograms/hectare), proposed size of treatment area (hectares), actual size of treatment area (hectares), and the total quantity of pesticide product used (kilograms active ingredient).

Exterminator:
Identify the name and number of the exterminator.

Aircraft:
Enter the aircraft registration number.

Incidents / Complaints:
Indicate if incidents occurred or complaints were received (yes/no). For incidents or complaints enter the reference number supplied by MOECC pesticides specialist.
AR-6: Annual Report of Forest Compliance Inspection Reports, Non-Compliances and Remedies Applied

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Operations Inspected</th>
<th>Industry Reports</th>
<th>MNRF Reports</th>
<th>Industry + MNRF Total</th>
<th>Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports</th>
<th>Non-Compliance</th>
<th>Remedy Applied</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number in Compliance</td>
<td>Number Not In Compliance</td>
<td>Total Number</td>
<td>Number in Compliance</td>
<td>Number Not In Compliance</td>
<td>Total Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aggregates</td>
<td>Area of Concern</td>
<td>Fire Prevention</td>
<td>Road Construction</td>
<td>Water Crossing</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cutting</td>
<td>Area of Concern</td>
<td>Fire Prevention</td>
<td>Wasteful Practice</td>
<td>Wood Measurement/ Movement</td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fire Prevention</td>
<td>Pesticide Application</td>
<td>Renovation</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fire Prevention</td>
<td>Pesticide Application</td>
<td>Tending</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fire Prevention</td>
<td>Pesticide Application</td>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
Remedies are not always applied the same year that the non-compliance occurred. Numbers for Reports and Non-Compliance are not comparable to the numbers for Remedies Applied.

Compliance reports with a pending status are not included in this table.
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-6: Annual Report of Forest Compliance Inspection Reports, Non-Compliances and Remedies Applied

This table summarizes the forest operations inspection reports information collected by the SFL holder and MNRF, and the activities where non-compliances occurred. The table also summarizes the remedies applied during the fiscal year. The requirements for forest operations compliance inspections and reporting are described in the Forest Compliance Handbook. The inspections reported in this table are those that were conducted during the period of the annual report regardless of the year that the operation was conducted. The remedies reported in this table are those that were applied during the period of the annual report regardless of the year in which the non-compliance occurred.

Complete the table for each forest operation type as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

**Industry Submitted Reports** by Operation Type (i.e., Access, Harvest, Renewal, Maintenance):

Enter the number of reports determined to be in Compliance reports, the number of reports determined to be Not in Compliance reports, and complete the totals.

**MNRF Submitted Reports** by Operation Type (i.e., Access, Harvest, Renewal, Maintenance):

Enter the number of reports determined to be in Compliance reports, the number of reports determined to be Not in Compliance reports, and complete the totals.

The SFL holder will add together the numbers from the industry and MNRF submitted reports to populate the columns for the **Industry + MNRF Total Reports**.

MNRF will provide the Total Number of MNRF Non SFL Related Reports and the SFL holder will add these numbers to the industry Non SFL Related Reports to populate the column for **Non SFL Related Reports**. The SFL holder will complete the column totals.

**Non-Compliances**

MNRF will provide the number of non-compliances for each activity by operation type.

**Remedy Applied**

MNRF will provide the total number of written warnings, orders issued, administrative penalties paid, offence fines paid, and licences suspended or cancelled.
AR-7: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Area

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Past Plans &lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>Past Plans &lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>Planned Harvest</th>
<th>Actual Harvest</th>
<th>Projections Medium-Term &lt;year+20&gt;</th>
<th>Long-Term &lt;year+100&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-7: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Area

This table summarizes planned and actual harvest area by forest unit for the current and previous FMPs, and the projected harvest area for the current FMP.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

Forest Unit:
Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2.

Area (ha) - Annualized:
Enter the average annual planned and actual harvest area (hectares) by forest unit for the applicable past FMPs and current FMP.

Planned Harvest:
Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. For the current FMP enter the planned harvest.

Actual Harvest:
Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. For the current FMP enter the actual harvest.

Projected Harvest Area:
Include information from the current FMP to reflect projections from the FMP LTMD.

Enter all totals as required.
## AR-8: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Volume

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Past Plans (year)</th>
<th>Past Plans (year)</th>
<th>Past Plans (year)</th>
<th>Past Plans (year)</th>
<th>Current Plan (year)</th>
<th>Planned Harvest (year+20)</th>
<th>Actual Harvest (year+20)</th>
<th>Medium-Term (year+20)</th>
<th>Long-Term (year+20)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-8: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Volume

This table summarizes forecast and actual harvest volume by species for the current and previous FMPs and the projected volume by species for the current FMP.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

Species:

Enter the species.

Volume (000s m³) - Annualized:

Enter the average annual planned and actual harvest volume (000s cubic meters) by species for the applicable past FMPs and the current FMP.

Planned Harvest Volume:

Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. For the current FMP enter the planned harvest volume.

Actual Harvest Volume:

Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. For the current FMP enter the actual harvest volume.

Projected Harvest Volume:

Include information from the current FMP to reflect projections from the FMP LTMD.

Enter all totals as required.
**AR-9: Summary of Planned and Actual Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>PLANNED Past Plans</th>
<th>ACTUAL Past Plans</th>
<th>PLANNED Current Plan</th>
<th>ACTUAL Current Plan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regeneration</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt; &lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artificial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Regeneration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prescribed Burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Site Preparation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tending</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleaning (Manual, Mechanical, Chemical, Prescribed Burn)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spacing, Pre-Commercial Thinning, Improvement Cutting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Tending</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-9 Summary of Planned and Actual Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations

This table summarizes the annualized area of renewal, tending, and protection operations, including those associated with tree improvement. Planned and actual area from past FMPs and actual area from the current FMP are included.

Complete the table as follows:

Area (ha) - Annualized:
Enter the average annual planned and actual silvicultural treatment area (hectares) by treatment method for the applicable past FMPs. Enter the average annual projected silvicultural treatment area (hectares) by treatment method for the current FMP.

Planned:
Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available.

Actual:
Enter information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available. Include information from the current FMP to reflect actual for FMP start year.

Renewal

Regeneration:
Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting or seeding treatments.

Site Preparation:
Enter the area treated. Site preparation for natural regeneration is included in the area reported. For slash pile burns, report the area associated with the burned piles rather than the total area that provided the source of the slash.
1 **Tending:**
   Enter the area treated by tending method. Areas reported as selection harvest under
   regeneration, that are predominantly non-commercial, will also be reported as
   improvement cuts under tending.

2 **Protection (Insect Pest Control):**
   Enter the area treated by protection method.

3 Enter all totals as required.
AR-10: Summary of Forest Condition for the Available Managed Crown Productive Forest

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forest Unit</th>
<th>Age/Condition Class</th>
<th>Past Plans</th>
<th>Current Plan &lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>Projections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent Disturbance Below Regen Standard</td>
<td>0-20</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>Plan Start &lt;year&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21-40</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>41-60</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>61-80</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>81-100</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101-120</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>121-140</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>141-160</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>161-180</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>181-200</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>201+</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Forest Unit Subtotal

Total
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-10  Summary of Forest Condition for the Available Managed Crown Productive Forest

This table summarizes the available managed Crown productive forest area (hectares), by forest unit and age, over time. The source of the information is the planning inventory from past and current FMPs as reflected in the applicable FMP tables (e.g., FMP-3). The source of the current FMP end data is the planning inventory and applicable FMP table prepared for the next FMP. For the year five annual report use the information submitted with the first four annual reports for the current plan.

Complete the table as follows:
- Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

**Forest Unit:**
- Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2. For past FMPs use the forest unit in FMP-2 that best describes those used in the applicable past FMP.

**Age:**
- Enter the age (e.g., 20-year age class, seral stage). This column is not completed for forest units managed under the selection silvicultural system.

**Recent Disturbance:**
- Areas of stand replacing natural disturbance (e.g., fire) or harvested areas that have not received a silvicultural treatment for regeneration such as natural regeneration, seeding, or planting.

**Below Regeneration Standards:**
- Area of productive forest stands that have received regeneration treatments such as natural regeneration, seeding, or planting but do not yet meet the regeneration standards in an approved FMP. Includes natural disturbances and harvested area.

**Area (ha):**
- Enter the area of the Crown productive forest (hectares) by forest unit and age for the applicable past and current FMPs (e.g., FMP-3).

**Past Plans:**
- Enter past FMP start year information from at least three past FMPs and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available.

**Current Plan:**
Include information from the current FMP to reflect FMP start and specific required projections from the FMP start year. Insert the FMP start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current FMP end information and insert the FMP end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
AR-11: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wildlife Species</th>
<th>Area of Habitat (ha)</th>
<th>Past Plans</th>
<th>Current Plan &lt;year&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plan Start</td>
<td>Projections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medium-Term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Long-Term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>&lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year+10&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year+20&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year+100&gt;</th>
<th>&lt;year&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME:

PLAN PERIOD: TO

ANNUAL REPORT: TO
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-11: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

This table summarizes the area (hectares) of habitat for selected wildlife species over time. The source of the information is the model outputs from past and current FMPs. The source of the current FMP end data is the model outputs and applicable FMP table prepared for the next FMP.

Complete the set of tables as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

Wildlife Species:
Enter the common names of the selected wildlife species.

Area of Habitat (ha):
Enter the area of habitat (hectares) for the selected wildlife species for the applicable past and current FMPs.

Past Plans:
Enter past FMP start year information from at least three past FMPs, and insert the past FMP start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past FMPs if reliable data is available.

Current Plan:
Include information from the current FMP to reflect FMP start and specific required projections from the FMP start year. Insert the FMP start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current FMP end information and insert the FMP end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.
**AR-12: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Forest Unit)**

Current Plan Period:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target Forest Unit Identifier</th>
<th>Total Future Forest Area (FU) (LTMD)</th>
<th>Total Area Assigned to Target FU to Date</th>
<th>Total Established FU</th>
<th>Total Assigned and Established</th>
<th>% Variance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Previous Plan:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target Forest Unit Identifier</th>
<th>Total Future Forest Area (FU) (LTMD)</th>
<th>Total Area Assigned to Target FU to Date</th>
<th>Total Established FU</th>
<th>Total Assigned and Established</th>
<th>% Variance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-12: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Forest Unit)

This table demonstrates the progress towards achievement of the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD. For each plan period the table provides a comparison of the planned future forest units from the LTMD to the assigned target forest units for the current and previous FMPs. The table will incorporate silvicultural decisions (e.g., changes to target FUs) made during current FMP and previous FMP implementation.

The source of information for this table is the output of forest modelling for the LTMD, the planning inventory, the annual report harvest information product, SGR change layer, and the target forest unit from the assigned SGR for the current FMP and the previous FMPs.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

Information will be reported by each FMP period.

Target Forest Unit Identifier:
Enter the forest unit as identified in Table FMP-2 for the current FMP and applicable FMP table from the previous FMP(s).

Total Future Forest Unit Area (FU) (LTMD):
Enter the total future forest area by forest unit as identified in the LTMD results for the applicable FMP.

Total Area Assigned to Target Forest Unit to Date:
For the current FMP period enter the total harvested area assigned to each target forest unit to date as identified in annual report harvest information product(s) using the target forest unit from the assigned SGR unless establishment survey information is available. For each previous FMP period enter the total harvested area assigned to each target forest unit to date as identified in annual reports or as confirmed by establishment survey information.

Total Established FU:
Where establishment survey information is available, enter the total established area by forest unit.

Total Assigned and Established:
Add the total area assigned to target forest unit to date and the total established forest unit.

% Variance:
Calculate the variance (i.e., the Total Assigned and Established/proportion of Total Future Forest Unit Area x 100)
**AR-13: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Yield)**

Current Plan Period:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target Yield Identifier</th>
<th>Total Future Forest Yield Area (LTMD)</th>
<th>Total Area Assigned to Target Yield to Date</th>
<th>Total Established Yield</th>
<th>Total Assigned and Established</th>
<th>% Variance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Previous Plan:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target Yield Identifier</th>
<th>Total Future Forest Yield Area (LTMD)</th>
<th>Total Area Assigned to Target Yield to Date</th>
<th>Total Established Yield</th>
<th>Total Assigned and Established</th>
<th>% Variance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-13: Status of Silvicultural Objectives (Yield)

This table demonstrates the progress towards achievement of the silvicultural objectives in the LTMD. For each plan period the table provides a comparison of the planned future yield from the LTMD to the assigned target yields for the current and previous FMPs. The table will incorporate silvicultural decisions (e.g., changes to target yields) made during current FMP and previous FMP implementation.

The source of information for this table is the output of forest modelling for the LTMD, the planning inventory, the annual report harvest information product, SGR change layer, and the target yield from the assigned SGR for the current FMP and the previous FMPs.

Complete the table as follows:

1. Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.
2. Information will be reported by each FMP period.

**Target Yield Identifier:**
Enter the yields as identified in the LTMD for the applicable FMP.

**Total Future Forest Yield Area (LTMD):**
Enter the planned harvest total future forest area by yield as identified in the LTMD results for the current FMP and from the previous FMP.

**Total Area Assigned to Target Yield to Date:**
For the current FMP period enter the total harvested area assigned to each target yield to date as identified in annual report harvest information product(s) using the target yield from the assigned SGR unless establishment survey information is available. For the most recently completed FMP period enter the total harvested area assigned to each target yield to date as identified in the planning inventory for the current FMP using the target yield from the assigned SGR unless establishment information is available.

**Total Established Yield**
Where establishment information is available, enter the total established area by yield.

**Total Assigned and Established:**
Add the assigned and established area together.

**% Variance:**
Calculate the variance (i.e., the Total Assigned and Established/proportion of Total Future Forest Yield Area x 100)
AR-14: Summary of Assessment of Establishment

Current Plan Period:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit</th>
<th>Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit Area (ha)</th>
<th>Silviculture Ground Rule (Code by Plan Period)</th>
<th>Area Assigned to SGR (ha) (All Years)</th>
<th>Total Area Established</th>
<th>Remainder to be Surveyed for Establishment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Harvest/Salvage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Unit Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past Plan Period:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit</th>
<th>Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit Area (ha)</th>
<th>Silviculture Ground Rule (Code by Plan Period)</th>
<th>Area Assigned to SGR (ha) (All Years)</th>
<th>Total Area Established</th>
<th>Remainder to be Surveyed for Establishment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Harvest/Salvage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forest Unit Subtotal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-14: Summary of Assessment of Establishment

This table provides a summary, by forest unit and SGR, of areas depleted and the associated establishment assessment. The information is to be reported by the plan period when the area was harvested or naturally depleted. This table reports assessments for harvest, including salvage. The source of this information is the harvest and assessments of regeneration information products.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period, and annual report year.

Past Plan Period:
Enter the applicable plan period for the previous FMP(s).

Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit:
For the current FMP enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2 confirmed at the time of harvest. For previous FMPs enter the forest unit from the applicable FMP table in the FMP at the time of depletion.

Confirmed Depleted Forest Unit Area:
For the current and previous FMPs enter the confirmed depleted forest unit area.

SGR by Plan Period:
For the current and previous FMPs enter the code for the SGR that was implemented as identified in FMP-4 or the appropriate table from a previous FMP. In the case where an original SGR was revised, enter the final SGR implemented. Harvested area not assigned to a SGR (e.g., roads, aggregate pits, and landings) will be assigned to “Null”.

Area Assigned to SGR (all years):
Enter the total area currently tracking on the SGR.

Total Area Established:
Enter the total area accepted by MNRF (i.e., MNRF validation complete) as established for the applicable SGR.

Remainder to be surveyed for Establishment
Enter the difference between the total areas assigned to the SGR and the total area established (i.e., verified).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.
**AR-15: Summary of Assessment of Performance**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confirmed Silvicultural Stratum</th>
<th>Plan Period</th>
<th>Area Assigned to Silvicultural Stratum (ha)</th>
<th>Assessment for Performance (ha)</th>
<th>Remainder (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-15: Summary of Assessment of Performance

This table provides a summary of the silvicultural stratum of areas depleted and the associated performance assessment. The information is to be reported by the plan period when the area was harvested, including salvage. This table reports assessments for harvest, including salvage. The source of this information is the assessments of regeneration information products and the planning composite inventory.

Enter the management unit name, the plan period, and annual report year.

Confirmed Silvicultural Stratum:
Enter the silvicultural stratum confirmed from the performance assessment.

Plan Period:
Enter the plan period at time of harvest.

Area Assigned to Silvicultural Stratum (ha):
Enter the total area currently tracking on the silvicultural stratum. This is the population from which the sample was selected for performance assessment.

Assessment for Performance (ha):
Enter the total area assessed for performance.

Remainder:
Enter the remainder of the area to be assessed to achieve the sample requirement.

Enter all totals as required.
AR-16: Assessment of Objective Achievement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Objective</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Plan Start Level</th>
<th>Desirable Level</th>
<th>Timing of Assessment</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Plan End Level</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Long</th>
<th>Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quantitative Objectives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualitative Objectives</td>
<td>Assessment:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INSTRUCTIONS

AR-16: Assessment of Objective Achievement

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators, targets and achievement, and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective at the end of the plan period.

Enter the management unit name, the plan period, and annual report year.

Management Objective:
Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

For each Quantitative Objective:
Indicator/Measure:
Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres) for levels, targets, and projections.

Plan Start Level:
Enter the FMP start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for the ten-year period (e.g., available harvest volume)

Desirable Level:
Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range, or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

Timing of Assessment;
Enter the timing of assessment for the indicator (i.e., FMP preparation, and/or FMP implementation)

Target:
Enter the target level for the indicator. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range, or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

Plan End:
Enter the actual FMP end level (i.e., may be to date activity levels from the annual report or FMP start levels for next FMP).

LTMD Projections
Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the LTMD, for the target year and for the medium and long term.
Assessment:
Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each management objective. The assessment will consider the FMP start, desirable, target and FMP end achievement levels, and the trend of the indicator over time.

For each Qualitative Objective:
Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text assessment of achievement of each management objective.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PART F – MANAGEMENT UNIT SPECIFIC DIRECTION</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-in Provisions</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITEFEATHER FOREST</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2 Planning Team</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.2 Project Plan</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous Knowledge</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1 Introduction</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1 Introduction</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.6 Roads</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORêt MANAGEMENT PLANNING</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Introduction</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Planning Team</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6 Documentation</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7 Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART C – PLANNED OPERATIONS</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7 Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART D – DOCUMENTATION</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7 Long-Term Management Direction</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Forest Management Planning Manual 2017
3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL REPORTS ..............................................................................................................13
3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations – Trend Analysis ..........................................................13
3.1.6 Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species ..............................................................................13
3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement ..............................................................................13
6.0 REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION ..............................................................................13
6.1 Introduction .........................................................................................................................13
6.2 Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation ......................................................14
6.3 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation ..............................................14
6.3.1 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five ...................14
6.3.2 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Eight ...................15
7.4 Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation ......................................16

CAT-SLATE FOREST ......................................................................................................................17

PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS ..............................................................................17
1.0 PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN ......................................................17
1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning ........................................................................17
1.1.1 Role of Elders ............................................................................................................................17
1.1.2 Planning Team ............................................................................................................................17
1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference ....................................................................................................................17
1.1.2.2 Project Plan ...............................................................................................................................17
1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information ........................................................................18
1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction ..................................................................................................................18
1.1.8.14 Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous Knowledge .................................................................18
1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....................................19
1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors .............................................................................................................19
1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations .....................................................19
1.3.6 Roads .............................................................................................................................................19

3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING ..................................................................................20
3.1 Introduction ..................................................................................................................................20
3.1.1 Role of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Elders ......................................................................................20
3.2 Planning Team ..................................................................................................................................20
3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning ..................20
3.6 Documentation ..................................................................................................................................21
3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report ............................................................21

PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS ..................................................................................21
4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS ...........................................................................................................21
4.5 Roads ...............................................................................................................................................21
4.7 Monitoring and Assessment .............................................................................................................21
4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections ......................................................................................................21
4.7.2 Exceptions .....................................................................................................................................21
4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration .........................................................................................................22

6.0 DOCUMENTATION ..................................................................................................................22
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Supplementary Documentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>REPORTS TO CAT LAKE FIRST NATION AND SLATE FALLS NATION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>7.3.1</td>
<td>Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>7.3.2</td>
<td>Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PART F – MANAGEMENT UNIT SPECIFIC DIRECTION

Part F describes requirements that are in addition to those described in Parts A, B, and E of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM) for the Far North management units that are added to the area of the undertaking (AOU).

Section numbers of Part F correspond to the related sections of Parts A, B and E. New section numbers are introduced in Part F if no such related section exists.

NOTICE:

On October 22, 2015, the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) submitted a request to the Ministry of the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC) to amend Declaration Order MNR-75 (MNR-75) to add the Cat-Slate Forest to the Area of the Undertaking (AOU) as identified in Schedule 1 of MNR-75.

This amendment would enable forest management activities to be conducted on the Cat-Slate Forest, as described in the MNRF request, in accordance with an approved Forest Management Plan.

On September 26, 2016, MOECC posted a Regulatory Proposal Notice on the Environmental Bill of Rights registry seeking input from Indigenous communities and organizations, stakeholders, and the public on the proposal.

As of the date that this Manual was approved, no decision has been made by the Minister of the Environment and Climate Change and the Lieutenant Governor in Council respecting the requested amendment to MNR-75.

If the Minister of the Environment and Climate Change, with the approval of the Lieutenant Governor in Council, amends MNR-75 to add the Cat-Slate Forest, as described in the MNRF request to MOECC, to the AOU, the requirements set out in this Manual, including the Management Unit Specific Direction for the Cat Slate Forest as set out in Part F of this Manual, will apply to the Cat-Slate Forest, subject to any conditions set out in MNR-75, as may be amended.

Phase-in Provisions

The requirements of Part F will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual except as follows:

- Management Unit Specific Direction for the Cat-Slate Forest does not apply to the Cat-Slate Forest as described in the request by the MNRF to the Ministry of the Environment and Climate Change (MOECC) dated October 22, 2015 unless, and until such time as:
The Minister of the Environment and Climate Change, with the approval of the Lieutenant Governor in Council, amends MNR-75 to add the Cat-Slate Forest, as described in the request by MNRF to MOECC dated October 22, 2015, to the Area of the Undertaking.

In the event that there is a conflict between any of the conditions set out in MNR-75, as may be amended, and Part F of this Manual, MNR-75 would prevail.
1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest, and includes provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum’s customary decision-making approach, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship traditions.

Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the Local Citizens Committee (LCC). Communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation to consult with Pikangikum First Nation.

1.1.2 Planning Team

For the Whitefeather Forest, the MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity to Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning team. If the community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be identified by the community’s leadership.

1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team terms of reference will also contain:
(f) a description of the process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

1.1.2.2 Project Plan

For the Whitefeather Forest, the project plan will describe responsibilities and specific tasks that are assigned to the representatives of Pikangikum First Nation on the planning team.

1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information

For the Whitefeather Forest, the background information that will be available for the period of forest management plan (FMP) preparation will also include:

(n) Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction

For the Whitefeather Forest, the documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making will also include:

(k) the existing approved land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest (Keeping the Land: A Land Use Strategy for the Whitefeather Forest and Adjacent Areas), or its successor.

1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous Knowledge

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge will be part of the background information that will be available for use in planning, to support the incorporation of Pikangikum customary stewardship practices. Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge is defined as the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and teachings that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of Pikangikum people.

Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters, including but not limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and cultural heritage sites, ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of behaviour, including appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this knowledge will be documented on the values map (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and some may be documented in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

Many aspects of Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge are more conceptual in nature, and are intimately tied to language. Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge is transmitted largely through
demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and teachings. To ensure Pikangikum
Indigenous knowledge is available for use in planning, another source of information will be
the Pikangikum people, particularly the elders.

The approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management
planning will be described in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part
A, Section 3.6.1).

1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

1.2.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, in the development of the long-term management direction
(LTMD), the planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e. spatially and
temporally) of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest. The
planning team will be guided by MNRF policy direction for Caribou (Boreal population), and
the strategic land use direction for caribou in Keeping the Land, as amended from time to
time.

A description of how the LTMD provides for a continuous supply of habitat for Caribou
(Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be prepared. The supplementary
documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the LTMD provides
for a continuous supply of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather
Forest.

1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary road corridors for the ten-
year period of the FMP through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will
be guided by the direction for access development and management in Keeping the Land,
and the objective in Keeping the Land to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the
Whitefeather Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has
addressed the direction for access development and management in Keeping the Land, and
the objective in Keeping the Land to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the
Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The description will be included in the
supplementary documentation of the FMP.
1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations

1.3.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, in the planning of forest operations for the ten-year period, the planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest. The planning team will be guided by MNRF policy direction for Caribou (Boreal population), and the strategic land use direction for caribou in Keeping the Land, as amended from time to time.

A description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest.

1.3.6 Roads

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in Keeping the Land, and the objective in Keeping the Land to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in Keeping the Land, and the objective in Keeping the Land to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in Keeping the Land, and the objective in Keeping the Land to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.
PART F – Management Unit Specific Direction

3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest and includes provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum’s customary decision-making approach and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship traditions.

Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation to consult with Pikangikum First Nation.

3.2 Planning Team

For the Whitefeather Forest, the MNRF district manager will offer an opportunity to Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning team. If the community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be identified by the community’s leadership.

3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning

For the Whitefeather Forest, the consultation approach for Pikangikum First Nation will provide an opportunity for Pikangikum First Nation to build community consensus prior to each formal public consultation opportunity, and prior to any corresponding consultation opportunity that may be developed for an adjacent First Nation or Métis community. The consultation approach will describe the approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous
knowledge in forest management planning and an appropriate means for documentation of Pikangikum community input.

3.6 Documentation

3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report

For the Whitefeather Forest, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will also include:

(e) a description of the approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning.
PART F – Management Unit Specific Direction

4.7 Monitoring and Assessment

4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

For the Whitefeather Forest, the ten-year compliance strategy will also describe the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

4.7.2 Exceptions

For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for exceptions will also include:

(e) the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration

For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for the assessment of regeneration will also include the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

6.0 DOCUMENTATION

6.1 Supplementary Documentation

For the Whitefeather Forest, the supplementary documentation of the FMP will also include:

(p) a description of how the LTMD provides for a continuous supply of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest;

(q) a description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply of habitat for Caribou (Boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest;

(r) a description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in Keeping the Land; and

(s) the objective in Keeping the Land to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.
PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

1.0 INTRODUCTION

For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Pikangikum First Nation. Part E, Section 6.0 describes the requirements for the reports.

3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR FIVE AND FINAL YEAR ANNUAL REPORTS

3.1 Implementation of Forest Operations – Trend Analysis

3.1.6 Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species

For the Whitefeather Forest, Caribou (Boreal population) will be one of the wildlife species included in AR-11. The analysis of the information in AR-11 will include a discussion of trends for Caribou (Boreal population) habitat, and any implications for the achievement of the management objective for Caribou (Boreal population) habitat in the current FMP.

3.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement

For the Whitefeather Forest, the management objective for Caribou (Boreal population) habitat in the current FMP will be one of the objectives included in AR-16. The summary of the assessment of objective achievement in the text of the management unit annual report will include a discussion of the achievement of the habitat target for Caribou (Boreal population) in the current FMP, and any concerns arising from the analysis of trends for Caribou (Boreal population) habitat (Part E, Section 3.1.6).

6.0 REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION

6.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Pikangikum First Nation. Those reports include:

(a) an annual report on FMP implementation each year (Part E, Section 6.2);
(b) a summary report on FMP implementation in each of the fifth and eighth years (Part E, Section 6.3); and
(c) a final summary report on FMP implementation in the year after completion of plan implementation (Part E, Section 6.4).
6.2 Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation

In November of each year, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare an annual report on FMP implementation for the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering Group. The management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of each year will serve as a source of information.

The contents of the report will include:

(a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Pikangikum First Nation during the year, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
(b) the amount of area harvested during the year;
(c) the amount of area site prepared, renewed and tended during the year; and
(d) the names of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members who participated in monitoring of FMP implementation during the year.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering Group, which may involve an oral presentation. The information products in the management unit annual report for the applicable year of FMP implementation will be available to assist with communication of the report.

7.3 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation

In addition to the annual report on FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare summary reports for Pikangikum First Nation in each of the fifth and eighth years.

7.3.1 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five

In the fifth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare a summary report on FMP implementation for Pikangikum First Nation.

The contents of the report will include:

(a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Pikangikum First Nation to date, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
(b) identification of the Pikangikum First Nation traplines affected by forest operations to date;
(c) the amount of forest operations to date, including:
   (i) kilometres of road construction;
(ii) area of harvest;
(iii) area of site preparation, by treatment type (e.g., prescribed burn, mechanical, herbicides);
(iv) area of renewal, by treatment type (e.g., natural, seeding, planting);
(v) area of tending, by treatment type (e.g., manual, herbicides); and
(vi) area of insect pest management, by treatment type (e.g., Bt);
(d) identification of the roads and road networks that have controls on public access to date, and the roads and road networks that have been decommissioned to date;
(e) a summary of the participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members in monitoring of FMP implementation to date, including a summary of the information recorded by Pikangikum First Nation participants; and
(f) a summary of the forest management-related educational opportunities that have been provided for Pikangikum First Nation (e.g., training, tours), and a summary of the participation of members of Pikangikum First Nation in those educational opportunities.

The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation.

7.3.2 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Eight

In the eighth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare an updated summary report on FMP implementation for Pikangikum First Nation. The year five management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the sixth year of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information that was included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year five. In addition, the report will include:
(a) a summary of how FMP implementation to date has contributed to the achievement of the management objectives of the FMP, and achievement of the goals and objectives in Keeping the Land; and
(b) a summary of the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and the recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending operations (Part E, Section 3.3).

The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation in the early stages of the planning of the next FMP, which begins in year eight. The information products in the year five management unit annual report will also be available.
7.4 Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation

In the year after completion of FMP implementation (i.e., year eleven), the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare a final summary report on FMP implementation for Pikangikum First Nation. The final year management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the first year after completion of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information and summaries that were included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year eight, to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Pikangikum Chief and Council, the Whitefeather Steering Group and the Pikangikum community. The information products in the final year management unit annual report will be available to assist with communication of the report.
1.0 PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning

1.1.2 Role of Elders

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use plan for the forest. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Cat Lake First Nation’s and Slate Falls Nation’s customary decision-making approaches, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on customary stewardship traditions.

Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will be represented through the Cat-Slate Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Cat-Slate Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation to consult with Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

1.1.2 Planning Team

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will each have representation on the planning team. The leadership of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will identify one or more representatives to participate on the planning team.

1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team terms of reference will also contain:

(f) a description of the process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group to seek their guidance (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).
PART F – Management Unit Specific Direction

1.1.2.2 Project Plan

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the project plan will describe responsibilities and specific tasks that are assigned to the representatives of Cat-Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation on the planning team.

1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the background information that will be available for the period of FMP preparation will also include:

(n) Cat-Lake First Nation’s and Slate Falls Nation’s Indigenous knowledge.

1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making will also include:

(k) the existing approved land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest (“Niigaan Bimaadiziwin – A Future Life”), or its successor.

1.1.8.14 Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous Knowledge

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge will be part of the background information that will be available for use in planning to support the incorporation of their customary stewardship practices. Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is defined as the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and teachings that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation people, as the case may be.

Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters, including but not limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and cultural heritage sites, ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of behaviour, including appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this knowledge will be documented on the values map (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and some may be documented in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

Many aspects of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge are more conceptual in nature, and are intimately tied to language. Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is transmitted largely through demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and teachings. To ensure Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is available for use in
planning, another source of information will be the Cat Lake and Slate Falls people, particularly the elders.

The approach to incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning will be described in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team will plan primary road corridors for the ten-year period of the FMP through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management as set out in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be prepared. The description will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations

1.3.6 Roads

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.
3.0 FIRST NATION AND MÉTIS COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT AND CONSULTATION IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Role of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Elders

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest, and include the provision for strategic advice, communication with the Cat Lake and Slate Falls communities, and building Cat Lake and Slate Falls community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of the Cat Lake’s and Slate Falls ‘customary decision-making approach, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Cat Lake and Slate Falls customary stewardship traditions.

Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will be represented through the Cat-Slate Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Cat-Slate Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group does not relieve MNRF of the obligation to consult with Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

3.2 Planning Team

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will each have representation on the planning team. The leadership of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will identify one or more representatives to participate on the planning team.

3.4 Development of a Customized Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the consultation approach for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will provide an opportunity for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation to build community consensus prior to each formal public consultation opportunity, and prior to any corresponding consultation opportunity that may be developed for an adjacent First Nation and Métis community. The consultation approach will describe the approach to incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest...
management planning and an appropriate means for documentation of Cat Lake and Slate Falls community input.

3.6 Documentation

3.6.1 First Nation and Métis Background Information Report

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will also include:

(e) a description of the approach to incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning.

PART B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS

4.5 Roads

A description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period, has addressed the direction for access development and management in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest and the objective to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

4.7 Monitoring and Assessment

4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the ten-year compliance strategy will also describe the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge.

4.7.2 Exceptions

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the monitoring program for exceptions will also include:
(e) the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge.

4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration

For the Cat-slate Forest, the monitoring program for the assessment of regeneration will also include the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Indigenous knowledge.

6.0 DOCUMENTATION

6.1 Supplementary Documentation

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the supplementary documentation of the FMP will also include:

(p) a description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest; and

(q) the objective in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

1.0 INTRODUCTION

For the Cat-Slate Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. Part E, Section 6.0 describes the requirements for the reports.

6.0 REPORTS TO CAT LAKE FIRST NATION AND SLATE FALLS NATION

6.1 Introduction

For the Cat-Slate Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. Those reports include:

(a) an annual report on FMP implementation each year (Part E, Section 6.2);
(b) a summary report on FMP implementation in each of the fifth and eighth years (Part E, Section 6.3); and
(c) a final summary report on FMP implementation in the year after completion of plan implementation (Part E, Section 6.4).

6.2 Annual Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation

In November of each year, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare an annual report on FMP implementation for the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council and the Cat-Slate Steering Group. The management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of each year will serve as a source of information.

The contents of the report will include:

(a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation during the year, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
(b) the amount of area harvested during the year;
(c) the amount of area site prepared, renewed and tended during the year; and
(d) the names of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers and other community members who participated in monitoring of FMP implementation during the year.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council and the Cat-Slate Steering Group, which may involve an oral presentation. The information products in the management unit annual report for the applicable year of FMP implementation will be available to assist with communication of the report.

7.3 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation

In addition to the annual report on FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare summary reports for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in each of the fifth and eighth years.

7.3.1 Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation - Year Five

In the fifth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare a summary report on FMP implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.
The contents of the report will include:

(a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation to date, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;

(b) identification of the Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation traplines affected by forest operations to date;

(c) the amount of forest operations to date, including:
   (vii) kilometres of road construction;
   (viii) area of harvest;
   (ix) area of site preparation, by treatment type (e.g., prescribed burn, mechanical, herbicides);
   (x) area of renewal, by treatment type (e.g., natural, seeding, planting);
   (xi) area of tending, by treatment type (e.g. manual, herbicides); and
   (xii) area of insect pest management, by treatment type (e.g., Bt);

(d) identification of the roads and road networks that have controls on public access to date, and the roads and road networks that have been decommissioned to date;

(e) a summary of the participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers and other community members in monitoring of plan implementation to date, including a summary of the information recorded by Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation participants; and

(f) a summary of the forest management-related educational opportunities that have been provided for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation (e.g., training, tours), and a summary of the participation of members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in those educational opportunities.

The report will be made available to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

7.3.2 Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Eight

In the eighth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare an updated summary report on FMP implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. The year five management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the sixth year of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information that was included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year five. In addition, the report will include:
(a) a summary of how FMP implementation to date has contributed to the achievement of the management objectives of the FMP, and achievement of the goals and objectives in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life; and

(b) a summary of the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and the recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending operations (Part E, Section 3.3).

The report will be made available to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in the early stages of the planning of the next FMP, which begins in year eight. The information products in the year five management unit annual report will also be available.

7.4 Final Summary Report on Forest Management Plan Implementation

In the year after completion of FMP implementation (i.e., year eleven), the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNRF, will prepare a final summary report on plan implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. The final year management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNRF in November of the first year after completion of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information and summaries that were included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year eight, to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council, the Cat-Slate Steering Group and the Cat Lake and Slate Falls communities. The information products in the final year management unit annual report will be available to assist with communication of the report.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

| Appendix I: Analysis Package Contents | .......................................................... 2 |
| Appendix II: Social and Economic Description | ....................................................... 5 |
| Appendix III: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form | .................................................. 8 |
| Appendix IV: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form | ........................................ 14 |
| Appendix V: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits | ........................................ 20 |
Appendix I: Analysis Package Contents

The analysis package will be used to document the information, assumptions, and decisions made during the strategic analysis conducted to support the development of the long-term management direction, and will consist of text, tables, maps and other information. The analysis package will be included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan (FMP).

The satisfactory completion of each progress checkpoint will be documented in the analysis package and will include the following documentation:

**Planning Inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.8.5):**

(a) development of the planning inventory products and the manner in which forest description information is updated, projected, or forecasted; and

(b) documentation of planning inventory checkpoint

**Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition (Part A, Section 1.2.2):**

(a) results of the planning team’s review of forest classifications from the current FMP including rationale for decisions to confirm, update or revise existing classifications;

(b) development of the base model inventory and forest classifications:
   (i) the manner in which the planning inventory products are combined, classified and updated in the base model inventory;
   (ii) the assumptions used to update and forecast forest classification information (e.g., management decision attributes);
   (iii) the assumptions, methodologies and rationale for the classification of forest units, analysis units, landscape biodiversity indicators and other classifications; and

(c) documentation of forest classification and current forest condition checkpoint.

**Base Model Inventory and Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4):**

(a) results of the planning team’s review of base model assumptions from the current FMP including rationale for decisions to confirm, update or revise existing model assumptions;

(b) how background information, specifically recommendations from the year-five management unit annual report, was considered and incorporated into the model assumptions;
(c) if applicable, the manner in which management zones have been classified in the base model inventory and represented in the base model;
(d) the manner in which reserves, anticipated reserves and modified harvest areas are represented in the base model inventory and base model;
(e) methods and results for any sensitivity analysis conducted in the development of the base model assumptions;
(f) growth projections and yield curves, and the source(s) of information used in their development;
(g) forest dynamics (e.g., growth and yield, succession assumptions, disturbance assumptions);
(h) silvicultural options;
(i) management assumptions (e.g., including harvest flow rules, operability);
(j) a digital copy of the model run for the base model; and
(k) documentation of base model inventory and base model checkpoint.

**Management Objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1):**

(a) results of the planning team’s review of management objectives from the current FMP including rationale for decisions to confirm, update or revise existing management objectives;
(b) how background information, specifically recommendations from the year five management unit annual report and forest management guides, was considered in the development of management objectives;
(c) summary of scoping investigations and significant conclusions or results including:
   (i) changes and/or additions that are made to base model inputs and assumptions;
   (ii) results and conclusions that provide rationale for specific management objectives, indicators and desired levels and;
   (iii) a digital copy of a selected model run(s) that best represents each investigation;
(d) documentation of management objectives checkpoint

**Support for the Proposed Long-term Management Direction, Determination of Sustainability and Primary Road Corridors (Part A, Section 1.2.7):**

(a) how management objectives were represented in the analysis;
(b) how the achievement of objectives was interpreted from the model results;
(c) a summary of changes to the base model and rationale for those changes;
(d) a summary of modelling results including:
   (i) key results and conclusions that provide rationale for adjustment to targets, if applicable;
(ii) results of the risk assessment investigation(s);
(iii) the conclusions of the analysis, with a digital copy of the model run for the proposed long-term management direction; and
(e) documentation of support for the proposed long-term management direction, determination of sustainability and primary road corridors checkpoint.
Appendix II: Social and Economic Description

Part 1: Demographic Profiles

The profile of each community identified in Part B Section 2.2.1 will contain the following data:

(a) population and labour force;
(b) community diversity and official language (diversity is an indicator of community resilience);
(c) household characteristics;
(d) individual income by gender;
(e) household income;
(f) educational accomplishment (education is also an indicator of community resilience); and
(g) labour force dependency ratios.

The standardized demographic profile is derived from Statistics Canada census data, and the most recent census data that are available are often several years old or more. The Ministry of Northern Development and Mines, Regional Economic Development Branch is also a source for community profile information. Other community data can be found on the Statistics Canada web site (http://www.statcan.ca) under community profiles. A planning team representative(s) is required to contact economic development officers in the communities identified in the social and economic context for the management unit, and ask them if they would review the profile, update it where they can, and add further relevant insight. Additional or updated information will be added to the profile in the most reader-friendly format, which may simply be as text.

Part 2: Description of the Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest

Information describing the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest provides the baseline information on the social and economic environment affected by management decisions in a FMP. The information in the description will be considered in the development of management objectives and the long-term management direction, and the planning of forest operations.

The planning team will collect and summarize information described in this section, where this information is available. The availability of this information will vary between management units. Sources of this information include government, the private sector and members of the public. Information may also be available from websites, reports, databases or other media. The sources of information used will be referenced in the description. If businesses are not willing to disclose information, the planning team will document, in the description, the efforts made to obtain the information.
The description should be organized by sector.

**Forestry and Wood Products**

(a) List the holders of overlapping licences and forest resource licences, and describe wood supply commitments and wood supply competitive process conditional offers of wood supply that remain in force.

(b) For each year over the past ten years, show the volume of wood from the forest, by conifer, intolerant hardwood, and tolerant hardwood, utilized by each receiving mill.

(c) Describe the destinations of sawmill residues (e.g., chips, sawdust) produced by local sawmills that use wood from the forest for secondary products.

(d) For the mills that receive a substantial amount of wood from the management unit, describe:
   (i) the types of products made;
   (ii) employment (including mills, woodlands, woodlands contractors);
   (iii) ownership of the mill over the past ten years;
   (iv) recent major upgrades; and
   (v) any events such as strikes, fires, etc that caused significant downtime.

(e) Provide, on an annual basis for each of the last ten years, the actual harvest volume (i.e., merchantable, and undersize and defect), the total amount of Crown timber charges paid (sub-divided by stumpage payments, payments to the forest renewal trust and payments to the forestry futures trust), and the average Crown timber charges paid per cubic metre.

**Recreation and Tourism**

(a) Describe the provincial parks and conservation reserves, within and adjacent to the management unit.

(b) For each lodge within or adjacent to the management unit, list the name of the business, capacity, type of lodge (e.g., hunting/fishing, snowmobile), and number of outpost camps. Where possible, also provide, the occupancy levels, the location of origin of the clients, seasonality of operations, and other such relevant information. Discuss trends of interest. Also describe how the lodge can be accessed.

(c) Where available, discuss the revenue generated from tourist lodges and employment (direct, indirect and induced).

(d) Describe the amount of direct local employment in the sector, and provide a breakdown of the seasonality of this employment. Determine indirect and induced employment.

(e) Describe the recreational facilities available on the management unit such as campgrounds, and trails for snowmobiles, all terrain vehicles, hiking, mountain biking, cross country skiing.
APPENDICES

(f) Describe Crown land recreation activities (e.g., hunting, fishing, Crown land camping, use of trails, snowmobiling, etc) on the unit.

(g) Describe any enhancements to quality or capacity of tourism lodges made during the past ten years.

(h) Describe any relevant tourism expenditure data, willingness to pay information, etc.

(i) Describe any relevant commercial tourism activities on the unit that are not associated with lodges (e.g., ecotourism or adventure tourism), provide the number of clients such businesses bring to the forest, and their impact on the local and provincial economies.

(j) Provide hunting and fishing data relevant to the management unit (e.g., the number of resident and non-resident licences issued).

(k) Provide available data on use of Crown land within the management unit for recreation.

Mining, Aggregate and Hydro Generation

(a) Describe any mining, aggregate and hydro facilities on or adjacent to the management unit. Where mining operations are found, describe the amount of mineral produced, reserve capacity, and expected mine life. Where available, discuss the revenue generated from the mine and employment (direct, indirect and induced). Discuss the economic contribution of mineral exploration activity on the unit.

(b) Where aggregates are produced, describe the number of pits and the amount produced, as well as revenue and employment information where available.

(c) Where hydro facilities are present, describe the employment and the economic impact of the operation on the local area.

Traplines, Baitfish and Other

(a) Discuss the number of traplines on the management unit, the number of trappers and estimate the trapping revenue.

(b) Describe the number of baitfish operations and their economic impact.

(c) Indicate how many people are employed by the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (MNRF) district office(s) associated with the management unit.
Appendix III: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form

This appendix is organized into four parts:

A: Primary Road Corridors
B: Branch Road Corridors
C: Operational Roads
D: Existing Roads or Road Networks

Complete Part A, sections 1 to 6 for each new primary road that is required for the next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part A, section 7 for each confirmed primary road corridor that is required for the next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads, that is required for the ten-year period of the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, section 1.3.6.2 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part C for each new operational road boundary, or a group of new operational road boundaries, for the ten-year period, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, sections 1.3.6.4 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road networks, that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, and for roads that will be used for forest management purposes, if a use management strategy does not exist, or an existing use management strategy is being changed, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.6.5 and 1.3.6.7.
A: Primary Road Corridors

Complete Part A for each new primary road.

ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:

1. Alternative Corridors

   Complete this section prior to stage two of consultation.

   Considerations which support the reasonable range of practical alternative corridors for analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):

2. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Corridors

   Complete this section for each alternative corridor prior to stage two of consultation.

   (a) Identify each alternative corridor (number) and provide a description and attach map at stage two and three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map in the draft and final plan;

   (b) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):

      (i) discuss relative advantages and disadvantages of the alternative corridors;

      (ii) identify use management strategy(s) and if the use management strategy(s) differ discuss the relative advantages and disadvantages of the alternative corridors (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7); and

      (iii) discuss the relative costs of construction and use management of the alternative corridors.

3. Summary of Public Comments

   Complete this section after stage two of consultation.

4. Proposed Corridor

   Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

   (a) identify the proposed corridor (number) and provide a description and attach map at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map in the draft and final plan;

   (b) rationale for proposed corridor; and

   (c) use management strategy;
5. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

6. Selected Corridor

If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of sections 4(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.

7. Changes to a Confirmed Primary Road Corridor Road Use Management Strategy

Use Management Strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7):

Provide the rationale for the change in road use management strategy.

Complete this section prior to stage two of consultation.

Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after stage two and three of consultation.

Use Management Strategy

If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.
B:  Branch Road Corridors

Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads with both a common rationale for the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER(S):

Provide the branch road name or a list of branch roads names, with both a common rationale for the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

1. Proposed Corridor

Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

(a) identify the proposed corridor(s) and provide a description and attach map(s) at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map(s) in the draft and final plan;

(b) rationale for the proposed corridor (Part A, Section 1.3.6.2, items (a) – (c));

and

(c) use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (g)).

2. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

3. Selected Corridor

If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.
C: Operational Roads

Complete Part C for each new operational road boundary, or group of new operational road boundaries with networks of operational roads with a common use management strategy.

OPERATIONAL ROAD BOUNDARY NAME/IDENTIFIER:

Provide an operational road boundary name or a list of operational road boundaries with networks of operational roads with a common use management strategy and attach map(s) at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map(s) in the draft and final plan.

1. Proposed Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network

Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (g)):

2. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

3. Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network

If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.
D: **Existing Roads or Road Networks**

Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road networks with a common use management strategy.

**ROAD or ROAD NETWORK NAME/IDENTIFIER:**

Provide a list of existing roads or road networks with a common use management strategy (attach map(s) at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map(s) in the draft and final plan).

1. **Proposed Use Management Strategy**
   
   Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.
   
   Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (g)):

2. **Summary of Public Comments**

   Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

3. **Use Management Strategy**

   If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

   If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.
Appendix IV: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form

This appendix is organized into five parts:

A: Area of Concern (AOC) Description
B: Operational Prescription and Condition
C: Operational Road Crossings
D: Primary or Branch Road Crossings
E: Monitoring Program

Complete Part A, Part B, and if applicable Part E for each individual AOC or a group of areas of concern with common values for which an operational prescription or condition is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

Complete Part A, Part C, and if applicable Part E for each individual AOC or a group of areas of concern with common values which will be crossed by an operational road(s), that has received public comment at stage three of public consultation, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.4.

Complete Part A, Part D, and if applicable Part E for each individual AOC which is crossed by a new primary or branch road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.
A: Area of Concern Description

Complete Part A for each individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with common values, prior to stage three of consultation.

1. Area of Concern Identifier:

The AOC identifier may be numeric, alphabetic or any combination, and will uniquely identify either an individual AOC or a group of AOCs with a common value.

In order to link the supplementary documentation form, FMP-11 and the detailed operations maps for the ten-year period, the AOC identifier will be entered in the first column of FMP-11, and will also appear on the operations maps.

2. Description of Value

(a) description of value(s) (listed in order of importance);

(b) dimensions of AOC:
B: Operational Prescription and Conditions

Complete Part B for each individual AOC, or a group of areas of concern with common values, for which an operational prescription or condition is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

1. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Operational Prescriptions and Conditions

Complete this section for each alternative operational prescription prior to stage three of consultation.

(a) alternative identifier/number;
(b) description of proposed operational prescription and condition:
   (Specify dimensions of reserve, if applicable, and/or modifications to regular harvest, renewal and/or tending operations, if applicable.)
(c) environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team, items (a) & (b)):

2. Proposed operational prescription and condition

Complete this section for the proposed operational prescription and condition prior to stage three of consultation.

(a) Description:
(b) Rationale
(c) Exception: (Specify if the operational prescription and condition is an exception, and identify applicable forest management guide, section and page reference.)

3. Summary of public comments

Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.

4. Selected prescription

If the proposed operational prescription and condition is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected operational prescription and condition is different from the proposed operational prescription and condition, complete the requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected operational prescription and condition.
C: Operational Road Crossing

Complete Part C for each individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common value, which will be crossed by an operational road(s), that has received public comment at stage three of consultation.

Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.
D: Primary or Branch Road Crossing

Complete Part D if public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an AOC by a new primary or branch road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:

Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.
E: Monitoring Program

Complete Part E if the operational prescription and condition for the individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common value, which was prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, is an exception to the specific direction or recommendation in a forest management guide, or if special requirements of a forest operations inspection(s) are prescribed. (NOTE: Do not complete Part E if the regular forest operations inspection program applies.)

1. Proposed Monitoring Program

Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

(a) Description;
(b) Methods to monitor effectiveness of exception prescription

2. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after stage three and four of consultation.

3. Monitoring Program

If the proposed monitoring program is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the monitoring program is different from the proposed monitoring program, complete the requirements of section 1 for the monitoring program.
Appendix V: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

The following operational standards apply to the extraction of aggregate resources for forestry aggregate pits:

1. Topsoil and overburden, where present, must be stripped and stored on site.

2. Aggregate material may be removed only within areas where access, harvest, or aggregate extraction has been planned and approved, with no removal occurring within 15 metres of the boundary of any planned area.

3. Aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern, except:
   (a) for a cultural heritage landscape or historic Aboriginal value, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, if,
      (i) FMP-11 of the FMP documents conditions on location, construction or use of the forestry aggregate pit, as per the advice of a qualified individual as defined by the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, and
      (ii) the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions; and
   (b) for all other values, if,
      (i) FMP-11 of the FMP documents conditions on location, construction or use of the forestry aggregate pit, and
      (ii) the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions.

4. Notwithstanding standard 3 above, aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern for the following values, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values:
   (a) archaeology site;
   (b) cemetery; or
   (c) archaeological potential area.

5. When operating within 15 metres of a proposed roadside ditch, no excavation is to take place below the elevation of the planned depth of the proposed ditch; all excavations must be immediately sloped to no steeper than a 2:1 (horizontal: vertical) angle.

6. During extraction, no undercutting of the working face is permitted and:
   (a) the working face must be sloped at the angle of repose; or
   (b) the vertical height of the working face must not be more than 1.5 metres above the maximum reach of the equipment.
7. All trees within 5 metres of the excavation face must be removed.

8. The maximum pit area must not exceed 3 ha. When a pit or a portion of a pit is
rehabilitated, it is no longer part of the pit.

9. When the site is inactive, all pit faces must be sloped at the angle of repose.

10. Within the excavation area, no ponding is allowed and offsite drainage must be designed
to prevent sediment from entering any water feature.

11. Unless an aggregate permit (e.g., Category 9) has been issued, by the end of the 10-year
period starting from the commencement of the forestry aggregate pit:
   (a) buildings, structures, or processing equipment must be removed from the
   site; and
   (b) rehabilitation of the site must be completed.

12. Notwithstanding standard 11 above, MNRF may direct that a forestry aggregate pit be
rehabilitated prior to the end of the above-noted 10-year period where the responsibility
for the road and associated forestry aggregate pit is being transferred back to MNRF.

13. Final rehabilitation must include:
   (a) sloping of all pit faces to a minimum of 3:1(horizontal:vertical);
   (b) re-spreading of any topsoil and overburden that was stripped from the site;
   and
   (c) mitigative measures, to the satisfaction of MNRF, to prevent erosion (e.g.,
establishment of vegetation).

14. Existing or proposed forestry aggregate pits within areas of concern, or in the vicinity of
features that are addressed by conditions on operations, as described in MNRF’s forest
management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales,
must not be constructed or operated except in circumstances as identified in the
conditions on operations in the FMP. This includes any restrictions on the construction of
new forestry aggregate pits and timing of aggregate extraction, rehabilitation, or other
associated operations in existing pits.

15. Progressive rehabilitation of the site must be ongoing during the 10-year period, starting
from the commencement of the forestry aggregate pit.
# GLOSSARY OF TERMS

The purpose of this glossary is to define and to explain terms, used in forestry or otherwise, which appear and are of importance in the text of the Forest Management Planning Manual. The definitions provided in this glossary have been taken fully, modified or adapted from an already existing source, as indicated. References for these entries are abbreviated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARM</td>
<td>Access Roads Manual (August 1992)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFSA</td>
<td>Crown Forest Sustainability Act (1995)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAA</td>
<td>The Environmental Assessment Act (1975)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EA Decision</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Board's Reasons for Decision and Decision: Class Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural Resources for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02) (1994)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EALS</td>
<td>An Ecosystem Approach to Living Sustainably. A Perspective for the Ministry of Natural Resources (September, 1995)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESA</td>
<td>Endangered Species Act (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIM</td>
<td>Forest Information Manual (2017)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FITC</td>
<td>Forest Inventory Terms in Canada. Canadian Forest Inventory Committee, Forestry Canada (1988)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glossary Entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>FOSM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>SFR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>SM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>URN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

NOTE: Underlined words within definitions are also defined in the glossary.

ACCESS
The forest management operations of road construction, road maintenance, and the use management of roads to provide access to the forest for the harvest of the forest resource, transport of those resources to wood processing facilities, and forest management renewal and maintenance activities. (EA Dec Order)

ACCESS CONTROL (roads)
The closure of a road to public travel or the restricted access to a road for certain specified uses for given periods of time. (Modified ARM)

AGE CLASS
One of the intervals into which the age range of forest stands is divided for classification and use. (Adapted URN 87)

AGGREGATE EXTRACTION AREA
An individual polygon depicting a known site of aggregate within 500 meters of an existing forest access road that is outside: an approved harvest area; an operational road boundary; a primary road corridor; or a branch road corridor where a forestry aggregate pit is planned to be established.

ANALYSIS TOOL (FOREST)
A computer-based tool used to model, project, simulate or forecast data and information. Forest analysis tools are used in the development and evaluation of the long-term management direction in a forest management plan.

ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE
A document, mainly in the form of tables and maps, which identifies the type and extent of forest operations to be carried out during one year, consistent with the forest management plan. (Adapted URN 4417)

AREA CHARGES
The charges to be paid in respect of the area under a Forest Resource Licence, as required by the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, the Regulations, and the licence.

AREA OF CONCERN (AOC)
A geographic area established for an identified value that may be affected by forest management activities. (EA Dec Order)

AREA OF OPERATIONS
A geographic area comprised of individual, groups and/or portions of forest stands selected for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of a forest management plan.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

AREA OF THE UNDERTAKING
The area of Crown land, on which forest management activities may be conducted in accordance with the requirements of EA Dec Order MNR-75 in Ontario. Forest management plans are prepared for management units within this area. (Modified EA Dec Order)

The Area of the Undertaking is depicted in Schedule 1 of Declaration Order MNR-75.

ARTIFICIAL REGENERATION
Renewal of a forest, by seeding or planting seedlings or cuttings. (STC)

BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY (syn: Biodiversity)
The variety and variability among living organisms from all sources, including terrestrial, marine and aquatic ecosystems, and the ecological complexes of which they a part. (OG)

Biodiversity: includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems. (CBS95)

BIOPRODUCT
There are three categories of Bioproducts: bioenergy, biomaterials, and biochemicals. This list is not exhaustive and has been populated only to provide examples of the range of bioproducts that can be manufactured or produced from trees.

1. Bioenergy includes: liquid transportation (e.g. ethanol, biodiesel), solid biomass fuels (e.g. pellets, briquettes, chips) for the generation of heat and power, gaseous fuels (e.g. syngas) which can be used to generate heat and power, heat production, and electricity generation;
2. Biomaterials include: bioplastics (e.g. containers), and biocomposites (e.g. automotive parts) manufactured from tree fibres
3. Biochemicals include: bioindustrial chemicals, including basic and specialty chemicals and resins (e.g. paints, lubricants, solvents, dyes), biopharmaceuticals (e.g. antibodies, vaccines), and biocosmetics (e.g. makeup, soaps, body creams, lotions).

CLEARCUT
Noun.
1. An area harvested under the clearcut silvicultural system.
2. An area of forest land from which all (or most) merchantable trees have recently been harvested.

Verb. To harvest the merchantable trees in an area, normally in one operation. (Modified STC)

CLEARCUT SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM
A method of harvesting and regenerating an even-aged forest stand(s) in which new seedlings become established in fully exposed microenvironments after removal of all (or most) of the merchantable trees. Regeneration can originate naturally or artificially. Clearcutting may be done in blocks, strips, or patches.
(Modified STC)

CONIFER
Trees and shrubs belonging to the order Coniferales, usually evergreen with cones and needle-shaped leaves.

CONSERVATION
Management of the human use of the biosphere so that it may yield the greatest sustainable benefit to present generations while maintaining its potential to meet the needs and aspirations of future generations, and includes the preservation, maintenance, sustainable utilization, restoration and enhancement of the environment. Modern conservation theory incorporates the notion that what is to be conserved is not so much the physical state of an ecological system as the ecological processes by which that state is created and maintained. (Aird)

CONTINGENCY AREA
Harvest areas identified and planned for, in the event that circumstances arise which cause selected harvest areas to be no longer available for operations. Contingency area will serve as replacement for selected harvest areas, and will only be used if needed.

CONTINGENCY PLAN
An interim forest management plan that is required when special circumstances affect the implementation of a forest management plan. An approved contingency plan permits the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current approved forest management plan and the approval for implementation of the renewed forest management plan.

CORRIDOR
An area of uniform width bordering both or one side of a lineal feature such as a stream or route. (FITC)

CRITERIA
Harvest: A distinguishing set of characteristics that allows the identification of areas that are eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

Sustainability: See Criterion

CRITERION
1. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are monitored
periodically to assess change. (SFR 2001)

2. A category of conditions or processes by which **sustainable forest management** may be assessed. A criterion is characterized by a set of related **indicators** that are measured or assessed periodically to assess change.

3. A distinguishable characteristic of **sustainable forest management**; a value that must be considered in setting objectives and in assessing performance. (SFR 2001)

**CROWN FOREST**

A forest ecosystem or part of a forest ecosystem that is on land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario and under the management of the Minister of Natural Resources and Forestry. (CFSA)

**CROWN FOREST SUSTAINABILITY ACT**

An Act of the Ontario legislature to provide for the sustainability of Crown forests and, in accordance with that objective, to manage Crown forests to meet social, economic and environmental needs of present and future generations. (Modified CFSA)

**CROWN LAND**

Land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario.

**CUTTING CYCLE**

The planned interval between partial harvests in an uneven-aged stand. (STC)

**DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEM**

Information systems that utilize **analysis tools** (decision modules), databases and a decision maker’s own insight in an interactive analytical modeling process to reach a specific decision.

**DECOMMISSIONING (roads)**

For roads or road networks identified for transfer to MNRF where MNRF’s management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, the physical work that will be undertaken to render the road impassable to vehicular traffic, enhance public safety and reduce potential environmental damage (e.g., removal of a water crossing(s), site preparation and regeneration).

**DESIGNATED**

With respect to a Section 18 Overall Benefit Instrument, “designated” means that all of the applicable requirements under ss. 18(1)(a) through (d) and ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) have been satisfied.

**DESIRED FOREST AND BENEFITS**

The forest structure and composition and the goods and services, which are desired from the forest to achieve a balance of social, economic and environmental needs.
The long-term management direction for the management unit is developed to achieve the desired forest and benefits.

DESIRABLE LEVEL
The measurable amount for an indicator, expressed as a specific number, a range or a trend, used in the assessment of sustainability.

DISEASE
Harmful deviation from normal functioning of physiological processes, generally abiotic or biotic in origin. (STC)

ECOSITE
An ecological landscape unit (ranging in resolution from thousands to hundreds of hectares) comprised of relatively uniform geology, parent materials, soils, topography and hydrology, occupied by a consistent complex of successional-related vegetation conditions.

ECOSYSTEM
The sum of the plants, animals, environmental influences and their interactions, within a particular habitat. (STC)

ENVIRONMENT
Has the same meaning as in the Environmental Assessment Act.

EXCEPTION
A silvicultural treatment in the silvicultural ground rules which differs from the recommendations in the applicable silvicultural guide, or an operational prescription or condition for an area of concern which differs from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guide.

FIRST NATION COMMUNITY
A First Nation community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with Part A, Section 3.1.1 of this manual.

FISH HABITAT
Spawning grounds and any other areas, including nursery, rearing, food supply and migration areas, on which fish depend directly or indirectly in order to carry out their life processes.

FOREST
1. (Ecology) A plant community predominantly of trees and other woody vegetation, growing more or less closely together (URN 2441);
2. (Silvicultural Management) An area managed for the production of timber and other forest products, or maintained under woody vegetation for such indirect benefits as protection of site or for recreation (URN 2442).

3. (Forest Diversity) An aggregate of forest stands.

FOREST COVER
All of the trees as described by the Forest Resources Inventory.

FOREST DISTURBANCE
A natural (e.g. fire) or anthropogenic (e.g. timber harvest) event in the forest that alters the natural succession of a forest stand or stands.

FOREST DYNAMICS
The natural processes involved in the development of a forest, and associated with growth and changes to its structure and composition through time.

FOREST ECOSYSTEM
An ecosystem in which trees are, or are capable of being, a major biological component. (CFSA)

FOREST HEALTH
The condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem’s complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario. (CFSA)

FOREST MANAGEMENT
Generally, the practical application of scientific, economic and social principles to the administration and working of a forest for specified management objectives; more particularly, that branch of forestry concerned with the overall administrative, economic, legal and social aspects, and with the essentially scientific and technical aspects, especially silviculture, protection and forest regulation. (Aird)

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
A document of that name prepared in accordance with the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994, for a management unit in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual. A forest management plan sets out the forest operations that may occur on a management unit by a holder of a forest resource licence while having regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values. (CFSA)

Current Plan: An approved forest management plan that is being implemented.

Past Plan or Previous Plan: The expired forest management plan for the plan period immediately preceding the current plan.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

FOREST OPERATIONS
The harvesting of a forest resource, the use of a forest resource for a designated purpose, or the renewal or maintenance of a forest resource, and includes all related activities. (CFSA)

FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTION
A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and maintenance activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition.

FOREST RENEWAL TRUST
A Trust that provides for reimbursement of silvicultural expenses incurred after March 31, 1994 in respect of Crown forests in which forest resources have been harvested and for such other matters as may be specified by the Minister, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister. (CFSA, section 48)

FOREST RESOURCE
Trees in a forest ecosystem, and any other type of plant life prescribed by the regulations that is in a forest ecosystem. (CFSA, section 3)

FOREST RESOURCES INVENTORY
A composite information product which is assembled from a collection of individual geographic information coverages that contain descriptive information about the timber resource on each management unit (e.g., stand age, stand height, species composition, stocking level). The forest resources inventory for a management unit divides the area into a number of components, such as water, non-forested, non-productive forest and productive forest, and further classifies each component by ownership/land use categories. (Adapted FIM)

FOREST STAND(S)
An aggregation of trees occupying a specific area and uniform enough in composition (species), age and arrangement to be distinguishable from an adjacent aggregation of trees. (Modified MNR 1998)

FOREST TYPE
A general term to describe a group of forested areas or forest stands of similar composition. (Modified STC)

FOREST UNIT
A classification system that aggregates forest stands for management purposes that will normally have similar species composition, will develop in a similar manner (both naturally and in response to silvicultural treatments), and will be managed under the same silvicultural system.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

FORESTRY AGGREGATE PIT
An aggregate pit which is exempt from the requirement for an aggregate permit under the Aggregate Resources Act, as the criteria set out in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual are satisfied (formerly referred to as category 14 aggregate pits).

FORESTRY FUTURES TRUST
A Trust that provides for the following matters, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister:
1. The funding of silvicultural expenses in Crown forests where forest resources have been killed or damaged by fire or natural causes.
2. The funding of silvicultural expenses on land that is subject to a forest resource licence, if the licensee becomes insolvent.
3. The funding of intensive stand management and pest control in respect of forest resources in Crown forests.
4. Such other purposes as may be specified by the Minister.
(CFSA Section 51(3))

GUIDE (forest management)
A Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry forest management guide described in the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual and any forest management guide that is adopted by reference in the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual. Forest management guides provide direction for forest management practitioners that must be used in the development and implementation of forest management plans.
(Modified EA Dec. Order)

GUIDELINE
A component of a guide that provides mandatory direction, but requires professional judgment for it to be applied appropriately at the local level. (MNR 2010)

HABITAT
An area on which the species depends, directly or indirectly, to carry on its life processes including life processes such as reproduction, rearing, hibernation, migration, or feeding and includes places in the area that are used by members of the species as dens, hibernacula or other residences; or if the species is one for which a habitat regulation has been made under the ESA, the area prescribed by that regulation as the habitat for the species. (ESA)

HARDWOOD
Trees that have broad leaves, in contrast to the needle–bearing conifers. Also, the wood produced by broad leaved trees, regardless of texture or density.

HARVEST AREA
Available: The area (in hectares) for each forest unit, as determined in the development of the long-term management direction, which serves as a limit for harvest area by forest unit, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

Contingency: see Contingency Area

Eligible: The areas, as determined by criteria consistent with the long-term management direction that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period.

Optional: The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are not preferred or selected harvest areas.

Planned: The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are selected for harvest during the ten-year period, up to the level of the available harvest area (with consideration for retained areas), by forest unit.

Preferred: The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are favoured for harvest during the ten-year period, up to the level of the available harvest area (with consideration for retained areas), by forest unit.

HARVESTING
The removal of forest products for utilization, comprising cutting and sometimes initial processing and extraction. (Adapted URN 2944)

HARVEST METHOD
A modification of one of the basic silvicultural systems which describes the harvest technique (e.g., strip clearcut, group shelterwood). (Modified FMPM 1996)

HARVEST VOLUME
Available: The estimated volume (in cubic metres) associated with the Available Harvest Area, as determined in the development of the long-term management direction.

Planned: The estimated volume (in cubic metres) associated with the Planned Harvest Area.

Utilized: The portion of the Planned Harvest Volume which is projected to be utilized to meet Industrial Wood Requirements.

Unutilized: The portion of the Planned Harvest Volume which is in excess of the Industrial Wood Requirements, which remains available for use by the forest industry.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

HERBICIDE
Any chemical preparation used to kill or inhibit the growth of forbs, grasses, woody plants, and their seeds. (STC)

IMPORTANT ECOLOGICAL FEATURE
A subset of natural resource attributes that are normally common and widespread, are often transitory, are rarely identified in advance of operations, and typically require minimal modifications to regular operations (e.g., Conditions on Regular Operations) to ensure they are maintained or protected. Important Ecological Features include, for example, wildlife trees, grouse nests, and ephemeral flows, seeps, and swales. Important Ecological Features may also include a species at risk or its habitat.

INDEPENDENT FOREST AUDIT
An independently led review, in accordance with O. Reg. 160/04 under the CFSA, of the adequacy of forest management practices, controls and processes to ensure that the management organization continues to be in control and in compliance with relevant legislation, policies and directives.

INDIVIDUAL ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT
An environmental assessment that is subject to the requirements set out in Part II of the Environmental Assessment Act (RSO 1990, chapter E.18, as amended).

INDICATOR
A systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are identified in each forest management plan to assess the effectiveness of forest management activities in achieving management objectives, and to assess the sustainability of the forest.

INDUSTRIAL WOOD REQUIREMENTS
Wood supplies from the management unit required to support the operation of existing and proposed wood processing mills. Industrial wood requirements are determined considering Crown wood supply commitments and offers, forecast operating levels of existing and planned mills, current and historic mill utilization, and business arrangements.

INSECTICIDE
Any chemical or biological preparation used to kill or disrupt the development of insects. (STC)

LANDSCAPE
A heterogeneous land area composed of a cluster of interacting ecosystems that is repeated in similar form throughout. (Forman)

A landscape is normally defined by geomorphology or climate.

**LICENSEE**

A person or company to whom a *Forest Resource Licence* has been granted. (SM)

**LOCAL CITIZENS’ COMMITTEE**

An advisory committee of local citizens established under section 13 of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994*.

**LOGGING METHOD**

A term which indicates the process used to move wood products from stump to roadside during a harvesting operation (e.g., full tree, tree length, shortwood).

**LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

The management objectives, indicators, assessment of sustainability, social and economic assessment, and levels of activities required to achieve the desired forest and benefits and provide for the sustainability of the forest for the management unit.

**MAINTENANCE (forestry)**

The forest management activities of tending and protection, which are carried out to ensure the survival and development of a forest to maturity.

**MAINTENANCE (roads)**

**Routine:** Those activities necessary to maintain or upgrade a road and right of way for the traffic using it. Routine maintenance may include minor road re-alignment within the right of way.

**Emergency:** Road maintenance that requires immediate attention to restore access and reduce the chance of personal injury, damage to equipment, inconvenience to road users and further road damage (e.g., major washouts, blocked culverts, damaged bridges, etc.). (ARM)

**MANAGED FOREST**

*Crown* forest for which there is no legal or land use planning decision which prevents the land from being managed for *forest management* purposes.

**MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVE**

A statement of quantitative or qualitative desired future benefits or conditions, developed specifically for the management unit, that are to be achieved through the manipulation of *forest cover*.

**MANAGEMENT UNIT**
GLOSSARY OF TERMS


MERCHANTABLE
Timber or a tree that is merchantable as defined in the Scaling Manual.

MÉTIS COMMUNITY
A Métis community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with section 3.1.1 of this manual.

MNRF
MNRF means the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry, or the ministry of the Minister that has been assigned to undertake responsibility for the Crown Forest Sustainability Act.

MODIFIED OPERATIONS
Harvest, renewal and tending operations, where prescriptions have been developed to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or unique prescriptions to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values.

MONITORING
The collection and analysis of data over extended periods of time. It provides information on past and present ecological, social, cultural, and economic trends, and a basis for predictions about future conditions. (EALS)

NATURAL REGENERATION
Renewal of a forest, by natural seeding, sprouting, suckering or layering. (STC)

NATURAL RESOURCE
A renewable (forest, water, wildlife, soil, etc.) or non-renewable (oil, coal, iron, etc.) resource that is a natural asset. (Aird)

OLD GROWTH
A functional condition (e.g. stand productivity, nutrient cycling, and wildlife habitat) of a forest ecosystem, in a dynamic state, that embodies a set of physical features and characteristics that typically include:
1. a complex forest stand structure (e.g. old trees for the ecosite, large tree size and wide spacing, multiple canopy layers and gaps, and rates of change in species composition);
2. large dead standing trees (snags), accumulations of downed woody material, up-turned stumps, root and soil mounds, and accelerating tree mortality.

OPERATIONAL PRESCRIPTION FOR AREAS OF CONCERN
An operational prescription for areas of concern is a prescription prepared for harvest, renewal and tending and protection activities to prevent, minimize or mitigate adverse effects of forest management operations on a natural resource feature, land use or value.

**OPERATIONAL ROAD BOUNDARY**
The operational road boundary is the perimeter of, the planned harvest area plus the area from an existing road or planned road corridor to the harvest area within which an operational road is planned to be constructed.

**OWNERSHIP (land)**
Classification of the provincial land base into the categories of Crown, patent and other vested interest.

**PATENTED LAND**
Land transferred from Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Ontario to an individual, company or corporation in perpetuity.

**PESTICIDE**
Any organism, substance or thing that is manufactured, represented, or sold or used as a means of directly or indirectly controlling, preventing, destroying, mitigating, attracting, or repelling any pest or of altering the growth, development or characteristics of any plant life that is not a pest and includes any organism, substance or thing registered under the Pest Control Products Act (Canada). (PA)

**PLAN AMENDMENT**
Any change to a forest management plan or a contingency plan which is normally consistent with the long term management direction for the management unit. If there is a change to legislation and/or associated regulations (e.g. Endangered Species Act, 2007), a Regional Director of Regional Operations Division, Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry, may request an amendment to a forest management plan or contingency plan that is not consistent with the long-term management direction. Amendments could range from simple corrections to the text of an approved forest management plan to changes requiring comprehensive planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.

**PLAN AUTHOR**
The registered professional forester licenced to practice professional forestry, under the Professional Foresters Act, 2000, who is responsible for the preparation and certification of a forest management plan. Where the original plan author of the forest management plan no longer has that responsibility, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

**PLAN PERIOD**
The ten-year timeframe of a forest management plan for which long-term management direction is established, and forest sustainability is determined.

**PLAN RENEWAL**
The time in the planning cycle marked by the approval of a forest management plan. Forest management plans are normally renewed every ten years.

**PRESCRIBED BURN**
The knowledgeable application of fire to a specific land area to accomplish predetermined forest management or other land use objectives. (STC)

**PRODUCTION FOREST**
Productive forest land, at various stages of growth, with no obvious physical limitations on the ability to practice forest management. (Modified EA Decision)

**PRODUCTIVE FOREST**
All forest areas which are capable of growing commercial trees, irrespective of planning decisions, and which is further sub-divided into “protection forest” and “production forest”. (Modified EA Decision)

**PRODUCTIVITY**
A change in biomass (volume) per unit area and time (yield, increment). (Kimmins)

**PROVINCIAL FOREST TYPE**
An aggregation of forest types used to describe forest cover at broad planning levels. Provincial forest types are defined in the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy*.

**PROTECTION**
Forest management operations which are carried out to prevent, control or manage the spread of, and/or the damage caused by insects and diseases. Protection may involve the use of insecticides or manual treatments.

**PROTECTION FOREST**
Productive forest land on which forest management activities cannot normally be practised without incurring deleterious environmental effects because of obvious physical limitations such as steep slopes and shallow soils over bedrock. (Modified EA Decision)

**REGENERATION**
The renewal of a forest, by natural or artificial means. This term may also be used to describe the young forest itself. (Adapted URN 4843, 4844, 4846, 4848)

Also see Artificial and Natural Regeneration

**REGENERATION STANDARD**
The required level of observable measures of a regenerating area to provide confidence that the target (i.e., mature) stand condition can be achieved.

**REGION or REGIONAL**
In this manual an administrative geographical unit of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.

**REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL FORESTER (R.P.F.)**
A person licensed to practice professional forestry in Ontario, under the *Professional Foresters Act, 2000*

**REGULAR OPERATIONS**
Harvest, renewal and tending operations conducted in accordance with the silvicultural ground rules.

**RENEWAL**
The silvicultural operations undertaken to stimulate and promote the establishment and growth of desired future forest stands, which may include the activities of site preparation and regeneration.

**RESERVE**
An operational prescription for an area of concern where operations are prohibited.

**RESOURCE STEWARDSHIP AGREEMENT**
An agreement negotiated between a resource-based tourism operation as determined by the Ministry of Tourism, Culture and Sport, and a sustainable forest licensee.

**RESPONSIBILITY ASSIGNMENT (roads)**
The party assigned responsibility for a road (and associated water crossings) (i.e., MNRF, sustainable forest licensee, other user).

**RE-TREATMENT**
A specific renewal treatment (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that has been applied and usually occurs after a preliminary assessment has determined that further treatment is necessary.

**ROAD**
*Primary:* A road that provides principal access for the management unit, and is constructed, maintained and used as part of the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads.

*Branch:* A road, other than a primary road, that branches off an existing or new primary or branch road, providing access to, through or between areas of operations
on a management unit.

Operational: A road within an operational road boundary, other than a primary or branch road, that provides short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often site prepared and regenerated.

ROAD NETWORK
A system of new or existing roads that provide access to a distinct geographic area. (Adapted FRWCI)

SALVAGE HARVEST
The harvesting of timber that has been killed or damaged by natural causes, such as fire, wind, flood, insects and disease. (Modified FOSM)

SARO LIST
The Species at Risk in Ontario list set out in O. Reg. 230/08 made under the ESA.

SCARIFICATION
Mechanical loosening of the topsoil of open areas, or breaking up the forest floor, in preparation for regeneration by natural seeding. (Adapted URN 5134)

SECTION 18 OVERALL BENEFIT INSTRUMENT
An agreement, permit, licence, order, approved plan or other similar document entered into, issued, made, or approved by the Minister in relation to which the requirements of ss. 18(1)(a) through (d) and ss. 18(1)(e)(iii) of the ESA have been met, and that therefore, has the same effect as a permit issued under section 17 (2)(c) of the ESA.

SEEDING
A form of artificial regeneration which involves the scattering of seed, more or less evenly, over an area.

SEED ORCHARD
A relatively small area, established with superior stock derived from selected parent material, and intensively managed to provide a sustained supply of genetically improved seed for use in an artificial regeneration program.

SELECTION SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM
An uneven-aged silvicultural system which involves periodic partial harvests, controlled by basal area, using vigour and risk characteristics to determine individual tree selection. (MNR 1998)

SHELTERWOOD SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

An even-aged silvicultural system where mature trees are harvested in a series of two or more cuts (preparatory, regeneration, removal, final) for the purpose of establishing regeneration under shelter of the residual trees, whether by cutting uniformly over the entire stand area or in narrow strips. Regeneration is natural or artificial. Regeneration interval determines the degree of even-aged uniformity. (Adapted MFM)

Also see Silvicultural System

SILVICULTURAL GROUND RULES
Specifications, standards, and other instructions, that direct silvicultural activities on a management unit during the period of the forest management plan.

SILVICULTURAL STRATUM
An aggregation of forest stands for forest management purposes that are in the same forest unit and have the same estimated growth and yield.

SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM
A planned program of silviculture treatments that extends throughout the life of a stand for the purposes of controlling stand establishment, composition, and growth (Smith et al 1997) (MNRF 2015).

SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT
The method of harvest, renewal or tending, as identified in the silvicultural ground rules, through which a forest operations prescription will be met.

SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT PACKAGE
A grouping of acceptable silvicultural treatments for the appropriate forest unit and ecosite combination which can be undertaken over time to achieve the desired future forest and benefits. (Modified MNR 1997)

SILVICULTURE
Generally, the science and art of cultivating forest crops, based on a knowledge of silvics (URN 5384). More particularly, the theory and practice of controlling the establishment composition, constitution, and growth of forests (URN 5385).

SITE PREPARATION
Disturbance of the forest floor, topsoil, and/or competing vegetation, by mechanical or chemical means, or by prescribed burning, to create suitable conditions for natural or artificial regeneration. (Modified MFM)

SPATIAL
Dependent on, or associated with, a specific geographic location.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Normally refers to information stored in a form or format that is directly usable by geographic information systems.

SPECIES
A singular or plural term for a population, or series of populations, of organisms that are capable of interbreeding freely with each other but not with members of other species. (Aird)

SPECIES AT RISK
Any species, which is listed on the SARO List.

STAGE OF MANAGEMENT
One in a series of harvest cuts performed over the life of a forest stand. The type and number of harvest cuts depends on the silvicultural system used.

STANDARD
A component of a guide that provides mandatory direction. (MNR 2010)

STAND IMPROVEMENT
The removal of trees to improve the composition and quality of a forest stand, generally used in the selection silvicultural system.

SILVICULTURAL OPTIONS
Broad groupings of silvicultural treatments that apply to the same initial forest conditions, achieve the same future forest conditions, require similar silvicultural expenditures and use the same growth projections and/or yield curves. Silvicultural options are used to represent silvicultural treatments during strategic analysis.

SUCCESSION
Changes in species composition in an ecosystem over time, often in a predictable order. (Aird)

SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT
Regeneration treatments (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that are applied when initial regeneration efforts are not expected to meet the regeneration standards.

SUPPLEMENTARY DOCUMENTATION
The part of the forest management plan that contains the information that supports the decisions in the plan and summarizes the information used in the preparation of the plan. The format for the supplementary documentation includes text, tables and maps.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

1. **SUSTAINABILITY**
   Long term Crown forest health. (CFSA)

2. **SUSTAINABLE FOREST LICENCE**
   A licence granted under Part III, section 26 of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994.*

3. **SUSTAINABLE FOREST MANAGEMENT**
   The management of forest ecosystems to maintain a healthy forest ecosystem which provides a continuous, predictable flow of benefits. Indicators of forest sustainability criteria are incorporated into strategic decision-making and into the periodic assessments of both forest and socioeconomic conditions. Forest operations are conducted in a manner that conserves forest health and minimizes undesirable effects on the physical and social environments.

4. **TENDING**
   Forest operations which are carried out to improve the growth or quality of a forest. Tending may involve cleaning (i.e., the removal of undesirable or competing vegetation through the use of herbicides or manual treatments), thinning, stand improvement or pruning.

5. **THINNING**
   Thinning is a form of partial canopy removal in an established stand that concentrates potential wood production of a stand on selected trees (Smith et al. 1997). Secondary objectives may include compositional objectives or developing future seed producing crowns. Thinning may be used to influence wood quality and quantity and achieve specific management objectives (habitat, aesthetics, watershed management, etc).

   **Commercial Thinning:** A thinning in which the harvested trees are removed from the site and used for commercial purposes.

   **Pre-Commercial Thinning:** A thinning that does not yield trees of commercial value, and is usually designed to improve crop spacing. (Modified STC) In Ontario, the term pre-commercial thinning is generally used in relation to even-aged management only. Pre-commercial thinning in uneven-aged management is referred to as "improvement cutting" or stand improvement.

6. **TIMBER**
   A wood material yielded by trees.

7. **TREE IMPROVEMENT**
   The control of parentage, combined with specific silvicultural treatments (e.g., tending) to improve the overall yield and quality of timber from forest stands.
GLOSSARY OF TERMS

UNDERSIZE AND DEFECT
Timber or a tree that is not merchantable, including undersize material and defects, as defined in the Scaling Manual.

USE MANAGEMENT STRATEGY (road)
An approach outlining the purpose and description, and defining the roles and responsibilities related to use, maintenance, use control, decommissioning and monitoring of roads on Crown land.

VALUE (values maps)
A term used to describe known natural, cultural or First Nation or Métis resource attribute or use of land, including all lakes and streams, which must be considered in forest management planning. (EA Dec Order)

VOLUME
The amount of wood in a tree, forest stand, or other specified area, recorded by a unit of measure.

WETLAND
Land that is seasonally or permanently covered by shallow water, as well as land where the water table is close to or at the surface. In either case, the presence of abundant water has caused the formation of hydric soils and has favoured the dominance of either hydrophytic or water-tolerant plants. The four major types of wetlands are swamps, marshes, bogs and fens. (Wetlands Policy)

WILDLIFE
Normally includes all wild mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians.

YIELD
The actual or estimated amount of product from a tree or a forest stand, or other specified area.